

WHITING OIL & GAS CORP  
Form 424B5  
September 09, 2013  
Table of Contents

Filed Pursuant to Rule 424(b)(5)  
Registration Nos. 333-183729 and 333-183729-01

**The information in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus is not complete and may be changed. This prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus are not an offer to sell these securities and are not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

**Subject to completion, dated September 9, 2013**

**PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

**(To Prospectus dated September 5, 2012)**

**Whiting Petroleum Corporation**

**\$1,800,000,000**

**\$ % Senior Notes due 2019**

**\$ % Senior Notes due 2021**

We are offering two series of notes consisting of % Senior Notes due , 2019 (the 2019 notes ) and % Senior Notes due , 2021 (the 2021 notes and, together with the 2019 notes, the notes ). We will pay interest on the notes on and of each year, beginning , 2014. We may redeem all or part of either series of the notes at the prices described under Description of Notes Optional Redemption. If we experience specific kinds of changes of control, we must offer to repurchase the notes.

The notes and guarantee (as defined below) will be our senior unsecured obligations and will rank equally in right of payment with all of our senior indebtedness, senior in right of payment to any of our subordinated indebtedness, including our outstanding senior subordinated notes, effectively subordinated to all of our secured indebtedness to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness and structurally subordinated to any liabilities of our subsidiaries that do not guarantee the notes. The notes will be guaranteed (the guarantee ) by our subsidiary Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation on a senior unsecured basis.

We do not intend to apply for listing of the notes on any securities exchange or for the inclusion of the notes on any automated dealer quotation system.

Investing in the notes involves risks. See Risk Factors beginning on page S-15 of this prospectus supplement.

|               | Public Offering Price(1) | Underwriting Discounts and Commissions | Proceeds, Before Expenses, to Us |
|---------------|--------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| Per 2019 note | %                        | %                                      | %                                |
| Per 2021 note | %                        | %                                      | %                                |
| Total         | \$                       | \$                                     | \$                               |

(1) Plus accrued interest, if any, from September , 2013.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of the notes or determined if this prospectus supplement or the accompanying prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

We expect that delivery of the notes will be made to investors in book-entry form through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company on or about , 2013.

*Joint Book-Running Managers*

Wells Fargo Securities

J.P. Morgan

BofA Merrill Lynch

*Senior Co-Managers*

BBVA Securities

SunTrust Robinson Humphrey

US Bancorp

Capital One Securities

CIBC

RBC Capital Markets

Mitsubishi UFJ Securities

*Co-Managers*

KeyBanc Capital Markets

RB International Markets (USA)

Scotiabank

Santander

Barclays

BOSC, Inc.

Comerica Securities

Fifth Third Securities, Inc.

Morgan Stanley

Raymond James

The date of this prospectus supplement is September , 2013

**Table of Contents**

**Table of Contents**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**Prospectus Supplement**

|  | Page |
|--|------|
| <u>About This Prospectus Supplement</u>                  | ii   |
| <u>Glossary of Certain Definitions</u>                   | ii   |
| <u>Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements</u> | vi   |
| <u>Prospectus Supplement Summary</u>                     | S-1  |
| <u>Risk Factors</u>                                      | S-15 |
| <u>Use of Proceeds</u>                                   | S-33 |
| <u>Capitalization</u>                                    | S-34 |
| <u>Description of Notes</u>                              | S-35 |
| <u>Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Consequences</u>     | S-78 |
| <u>Underwriting (Conflicts of Interest)</u>              | S-83 |
| <u>Where You Can Find More Information</u>               | S-88 |
| <u>Legal Matters</u>                                     | S-89 |
| <u>Experts</u>   | S-89 |

**Prospectus**

|   | Page |
|---|------|
| <u>About This Prospectus</u>  | 2    |
| <u>Forward-Looking Statements</u>                                       | 3    |
| <u>Whiting Petroleum Corporation</u>                                    | 3    |
| <u>Selling Stockholders</u>   | 3    |
| <u>Use of Proceeds</u>  | 4    |
| <u>Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges</u>                               | 4    |
| <u>Description of Debt Securities</u>                                   | 4    |
| <u>Description of Capital Stock</u>                                     | 18   |
| <u>Description of Depository Shares</u>                                 | 21   |
| <u>Description of Warrants</u>  | 22   |
| <u>Description of Stock Purchase Contracts and Stock Purchase Units</u> | 23   |
| <u>Where You Can Find More Information</u>                              | 23   |
| <u>Plan of Distribution</u>   | 24   |
| <u>Legal Matters</u>  | 27   |
| <u>Experts</u>  | 27   |

**Table of Contents**

**ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

This document is in two parts. The first part is this prospectus supplement, which describes the specific terms of this offering. The second part, the accompanying prospectus, gives more general information, some of which may not apply to this offering. You should read the entire prospectus supplement, as well as the accompanying prospectus, any other offering material and the documents incorporated by reference that are described under "Where You Can Find More Information" in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus. In the event that the description of this offering in this prospectus supplement and/or any other offering material is inconsistent with the accompanying prospectus, you should rely on the information contained in this prospectus supplement and any other offering material.

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and any other offering material. We have not, and the underwriters have not, authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. You should assume that the information appearing in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and any other offering material, as well as the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus, is accurate only as of its respective date. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date.

In this prospectus supplement, except as otherwise noted, we, us, our or ours refer to Whiting Petroleum Corporation and its consolidated subsidiaries.

**GLOSSARY OF CERTAIN DEFINITIONS**

We have included below the definitions for certain terms used in this prospectus supplement:

*3-D seismic* Geophysical data that depict the subsurface strata in three dimensions. 3-D seismic typically provides a more detailed and accurate interpretation of the subsurface strata than 2-D, or two-dimensional, seismic.

*Bbl* One stock tank barrel, or 42 U.S. gallons liquid volume, used in this prospectus supplement in reference to oil, NGLs and other liquid hydrocarbons.

*Bcf* One billion cubic feet of natural gas.

*BOE* One stock tank barrel of oil equivalent, computed on an approximate energy equivalent basis that one Bbl of crude oil equals six Mcf of natural gas and one Bbl of crude oil equals one Bbl of natural gas liquids.

*BOE/d* One BOE per day.

*CO<sub>2</sub>* Carbon dioxide.

*CO<sub>2</sub> flood* A tertiary recovery method in which CO<sub>2</sub> is injected into a reservoir to enhance hydrocarbon recovery.

*completion* The installation of permanent equipment for the production of crude oil or natural gas, or in the case of a dry hole, the reporting of abandonment to the appropriate agency.

*costless collar* An options position where the proceeds from the sale of a call option at its inception fund the purchase of a put option at its inception.



**Table of Contents**

*differential* The difference between a benchmark price of oil and natural gas, such as the NYMEX crude oil spot, and the wellhead price received.

*FASB* Financial Accounting Standards Board.

*field* An area consisting of a single reservoir or multiple reservoirs all grouped on or related to the same individual geological structural feature and/or stratigraphic condition. There may be two or more reservoirs in a field that are separated vertically by intervening impervious strata, or laterally by local geologic barriers, or both. Reservoirs that are associated by being in overlapping or adjacent fields may be treated as a single or common operational field. The geological terms structural feature and stratigraphic condition are intended to identify localized geological features as opposed to the broader terms of basins, trends, provinces, plays, areas of interest, etc.

*GAAP* Generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America.

*gross acres or gross wells* The total acres or wells, as the case may be, in which a working interest is owned.

*lease operating expense* or *LOE* The expenses of lifting oil or gas from a producing formation to the surface, constituting part of the current operating expenses of a working interest, and also including labor, superintendence, supplies, repairs, short-lived assets, maintenance, allocated overhead costs and other expenses incidental to production, but not including lease acquisition or drilling or completion expenses.

*MBbl* One thousand barrels of oil or other liquid hydrocarbons.

*MBOE* One thousand BOE.

*MBOE/d* One MBOE per day.

*Mcf* One thousand cubic feet of natural gas.

*MMBbl* One million Bbl.

*MMBOE* One million BOE.

*MMcf* One million cubic feet of natural gas.

*MMcf/d* One MMcf per day.

*net production* The total production attributable to our fractional working interest owned.

*NGL* Natural gas liquid.

*NYMEX* The New York Mercantile Exchange.

*plugging and abandonment* Refers to the sealing off of fluids in the strata penetrated by a well so that the fluids from one stratum will not escape into another or to the surface. Regulations of many states require plugging of abandoned wells.

*possible reserves* Those reserves that are less certain to be recovered than probable reserves.





## Table of Contents

*pre-tax PV10%* The present value of estimated future revenues to be generated from the production of proved reserves calculated in accordance with the guidelines of the SEC, net of estimated lease operating expense, production taxes and future development costs, using costs as of the date of estimation without future escalation and using an average of the first-day-of-the month price for each of the 12 months within the fiscal year, without giving effect to non-property related expenses such as general and administrative expenses, debt service and depreciation, depletion and amortization, or Federal income taxes and discounted using an annual discount rate of 10%. Pre-tax PV10% may be considered a non-GAAP financial measure as defined by the SEC. See note 3 to the Proved Reserves table in Prospectus Supplement Summary About Our Company of this prospectus supplement for more information.

*probable reserves* Those reserves that are less certain to be recovered than proved reserves but which, together with proved reserves, are as likely as not to be recovered.

*proved developed reserves* Proved reserves that can be expected to be recovered through existing wells with existing equipment and operating methods or in which the cost of the required equipment is relatively minor compared to the cost of a new well.

*proved reserves* Those reserves which, by analysis of geoscience and engineering data, can be estimated with reasonable certainty to be economically producible from a given date forward, from known reservoirs and under existing economic conditions, operating methods and government regulations prior to the time at which contracts providing the right to operate expire, unless evidence indicates that renewal is reasonably certain, regardless of whether deterministic or probabilistic methods are used for the estimation. The project to extract the hydrocarbons must have commenced, or the operator must be reasonably certain that it will commence the project, within a reasonable time.

The area of the reservoir considered as proved includes all of the following:

- a. the area identified by drilling and limited by fluid contacts, if any, and
- b. adjacent undrilled portions of the reservoir that can, with reasonable certainty, be judged to be continuous with it and to contain economically producible oil or gas on the basis of available geoscience and engineering data.

Reserves that can be produced economically through application of improved recovery techniques (including, but not limited to, fluid injection) are included in the proved classification when both of the following occur:

- a. successful testing by a pilot project in an area of the reservoir with properties no more favorable than in the reservoir as a whole, the operation of an installed program in the reservoir or an analogous reservoir, or other evidence using reliable technology establishes the reasonable certainty of the engineering analysis on which the project or program was based, and
- b. the project has been approved for development by all necessary parties and entities, including governmental entities.

Existing economic conditions include prices and costs at which economic producibility from a reservoir is to be determined. The price shall be the average price during the 12-month period before the ending date of the period covered by the report, determined as an unweighted arithmetic average of the first-day-of-the-month price for each month within such period, unless prices are defined by contractual arrangements, excluding escalations based upon future conditions.

*proved undeveloped reserves* Proved reserves that are expected to be recovered from new wells on undrilled acreage, or from existing wells where a relatively major expenditure is required for recompletion. Reserves on undrilled acreage shall be limited to those directly offsetting development spacing areas that are

## Table of Contents

reasonably certain of production when drilled, unless evidence using reliable technology exists that establishes reasonable certainty of economic producibility at greater distances. Undrilled locations can be classified as having undeveloped reserves only if a development plan has been adopted indicating that they are scheduled to be drilled within five years, unless specific circumstances justify a longer time. Under no circumstances shall estimates for proved undeveloped reserves be attributable to any acreage for which an application of fluid injection or other improved recovery technique is contemplated, unless such techniques have been proved effective by actual projects in the same reservoir or an analogous reservoir, or by other evidence using reliable technology establishing reasonable certainty.

*reasonable certainty* If deterministic methods are used, reasonable certainty means a high degree of confidence that the quantities will be recovered. If probabilistic methods are used, there should be at least a 90 percent probability that the quantities actually recovered will equal or exceed the estimate. A high degree of confidence exists if the quantity is much more likely to be achieved than not, and, as changes due to increased availability of geoscience (geological, geophysical and geochemical) engineering, and economic data are made to estimated ultimate recovery with time, reasonably certain estimated ultimate recovery is much more likely to increase or remain constant than to decrease.

*recompletion* An operation whereby a completion in one zone is abandoned in order to attempt a completion in a different zone within the existing wellbore.

*reserves* Estimated remaining quantities of oil and gas and related substances anticipated to be economically producible, as of a given date, by application of development projects to known accumulations. In addition, there must exist, or there must be a reasonable expectation that there will exist, the legal right to produce or a revenue interest in the production, installed means of delivering oil and gas or related substances to market, and all permits and financing required to implement the project.

*reservoir* A porous and permeable underground formation containing a natural accumulation of producible crude oil and/or natural gas that is confined by impermeable rock or water barriers and is individual and separate from other reservoirs.

*resource play* Refers to drilling programs targeted at regionally distributed oil or natural gas accumulations. Successful exploitation of these reservoirs is dependent upon new technologies such as horizontal drilling and multi-stage fracture stimulation to access large rock volumes in order to produce economic quantities of oil or natural gas.

*SEC* The United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

*standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows* The discounted future net cash flows relating to proved reserves based on the average price during the 12-month period before the ending date of the period covered by the report, determined as an unweighted arithmetic average of the first-day-of-the-month price for each month within such period (unless prices are defined by contractual arrangements, excluding escalations based upon future conditions); current costs and statutory tax rates (to the extent applicable); and a 10% annual discount rate.

**Table of Contents**

**SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

This prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein contain statements that we believe to be forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933 and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. All statements other than historical facts, including, without limitation, statements regarding our future financial position, business strategy, projected revenues, earnings, costs, capital expenditures and debt levels, and plans and objectives of management for future operations, are forward-looking statements. We caution that these statements and any other forward-looking statements in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein only reflect our expectations and do not guarantee performance. When used in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein, words such as we expect, intend, plan, estimate, anticipate, believe or should or the negative thereof or variations thereon or similar terminology are generally intended to identify forward-looking statements. Such forward-looking statements are subject to risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those expressed in, or implied by, such statements. These risks and uncertainties include, but are not limited to:

declines in oil, NGL or natural gas prices;

our level of success in exploration, development and production activities;

adverse weather conditions that may negatively impact development or production activities;

the timing of our exploration and development expenditures;

our ability to obtain sufficient quantities of CO<sub>2</sub> necessary to carry out our enhanced oil recovery projects;

inaccuracies of our reserve estimates or our assumptions underlying them;

revisions to reserve estimates as a result of changes in commodity prices;

risks related to our level of indebtedness and periodic redeterminations of the borrowing base under our credit agreement;

our ability to generate sufficient cash flows from operations to meet the internally funded portion of our capital expenditures budget;

our ability to obtain external capital to finance exploration and development operations and acquisitions;

federal and state initiatives relating to the regulation of hydraulic fracturing;

the potential impact of federal debt reduction initiatives and tax reform legislation being considered by the U.S. Federal government that could have a negative effect on the oil and gas industry;

our ability to identify and complete acquisitions and to successfully integrate acquired businesses, including our ability to complete the Williston Basin acquisition on the anticipated timeline and terms;

unforeseen underperformance of or liabilities associated with acquired properties, including the properties subject to the Williston Basin acquisition;

our ability to successfully complete potential asset dispositions and the risks related thereto;

the impacts of hedging on our results of operations;

failure of our properties to yield oil or gas in commercially viable quantities;

uninsured or underinsured losses resulting from our oil and gas operations;

our inability to access oil and gas markets due to market conditions or operational impediments;

the impact and costs of compliance with laws and regulations governing our oil and gas operations;

**Table of Contents**

our ability to replace our oil and natural gas reserves;

any loss of our senior management or technical personnel;

competition in the oil and gas industry in the regions in which we operate;

risks arising out of our hedging transactions; and

other risks described under the caption "Risk Factors" in this prospectus supplement.

We assume no obligation, and disclaim any duty, to update the forward-looking statements in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus or the documents we incorporate by reference herein. We urge you to carefully review and consider the disclosures made in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and our reports filed with the SEC and incorporated by reference herein that attempt to advise interested parties of the risks and factors that may affect our business.

---

**Table of Contents**

**PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT SUMMARY**

*This summary highlights information contained elsewhere in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and the documents we incorporate by reference herein. This summary may not contain all of the information that may be important to you. You should read the entire prospectus supplement, including Risk Factors, the accompanying prospectus, any other offering material and the documents we incorporate by reference into this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus carefully before making a decision to invest in the notes. We have provided definitions for the oil and gas terms used in this prospectus supplement in the Glossary of Certain Definitions included in this prospectus supplement.*

**About Our Company**

We are an independent oil and gas company engaged in exploration, development, acquisition and production activities primarily in the Rocky Mountains, Permian Basin, Mid-Continent, Michigan and Gulf Coast regions of the United States. Prior to 2006, we generally emphasized the acquisition of properties that increased our production levels and provided upside potential through further development. Since 2006, we have focused primarily on organic drilling activity and on the development of previously acquired properties, specifically on projects that we believe provide the opportunity for repeatable successes and production growth. On August 26, 2013, we executed a purchase and sale agreement to acquire for \$260.0 million certain producing oil and gas wells and development acreage in the Williston Basin in Williams and McKenzie Counties of North Dakota and Roosevelt and Richland Counties of Montana (collectively, the Williston Basin assets), which we expect to close by September 30, 2013, subject to customary closing conditions. We estimate that the Williston Basin assets had proved reserves of 17.1 MMBOE as of the August 1, 2013 effective date of the acquisition and average daily production of 2.4 MBOE/d for the month of August 2013. We believe the combination of acquisitions, subsequent development and organic drilling provides us with a broad set of growth alternatives and allows us to direct our capital resources to what we believe to be the most advantageous investments.

As demonstrated by our recent capital expenditure programs, we are increasingly focused on a balanced exploration and development program, while continuing to selectively pursue acquisitions that complement our existing core properties. We believe that our significant drilling inventory, combined with our operating experience and cost structure, provides us with meaningful organic growth opportunities. Our growth plan is centered on the following activities:

pursuing the development of projects that we believe will generate attractive rates of return;

allocating a portion of our exploration and development budget to leasing and exploring prospect areas;

maintaining a balanced portfolio of lower risk, long-lived oil and gas properties that provide stable cash flows; and

seeking property acquisitions that complement our core areas.

We have historically acquired operated and non-operated properties that exceed our rate of return criteria. For acquisitions of properties with additional development and exploration potential, our focus has been on acquiring

operated properties so that we can better control the timing and implementation of capital spending. In some instances, we have been able to acquire non-operated property interests at attractive rates of return that established a presence in a new area of interest or that have complemented our existing operations. We intend to continue to acquire both operated and non-operated interests to the extent we believe they meet our return criteria. In addition, our willingness to acquire non-operated properties in new geographic regions provides us with geophysical and geologic data in some cases that leads to further acquisitions in the same region, whether on an operated or non-operated basis. We sell properties when we believe that the sales price realized will provide an above average rate of return for the property or when the property no longer matches the profile of properties we desire to own.

S-1



**Table of Contents**

As of December 31, 2012, our estimated proved reserves totaled 378.8 MMBOE, of which 64% were classified as proved developed. These estimated reserves had a pre-tax PV10% value of approximately \$7,283.9 million, of which approximately 99% came from properties located in our Rocky Mountains, Permian Basin and Mid-Continent core areas. The following table summarizes our estimated proved reserves as of December 31, 2012 by core area, the corresponding pre-tax PV10% value and the six months ended June 30, 2013 average daily production rate:

**Proved Reserves as of December 31, 2012(1)(2)**

| Core Area  | Oil<br>(MMBbl) | NGLs<br>(MMBbl) | Natural<br>Gas<br>(Bcf) | Total<br>(MMBOE) | %<br>Oil | Pre-Tax<br>PV10%<br>Value(3)<br>(In millions) | Six Months Ended   |
|--|----------------|-----------------|-------------------------|------------------|----------|---|--|
|  |                |                 |                         |                  |          |   | June 30,<br>2013<br>Average<br>Daily Net<br>Production<br>(MBOE/d) |
| Rocky Mountains  | 154.0          | 17.9            | 139.8                   | 195.2            | 79%      | \$ 4,488.9                                    | 68.0   |
| Permian Basin  | 103.7          | 15.9            | 25.1                    | 123.8            | 84%      | 1,731.9                                       | 11.6   |
| Mid-Continent(4)   | 40.9           | 4.9             | 20.4                    | 49.2             | 83%      | 969.4   | 7.9  |
| Michigan   | 1.7            | 1.2             | 28.1                    | 7.6              | 22%      | 62.0  | 2.4  |
| Gulf Coast   | 1.0            | 0.2             | 10.9                    | 3.0              | 33%      | 31.7  | 1.4  |
| Total  | 301.3          | 40.1            | 224.3                   | 378.8            | 80%      | \$ 7,283.9                                    | 91.3   |
| Discounted Future Income Taxes                           |                |                 |                         |                  |          | (1,876.9)                                     |  |
| Standardized Measure of Discounted Future Net Cash Flows |                |                 |                         |                  |          | \$ 5,407.0                                    |  |

- (1) Oil and gas reserve quantities and related discounted future net cash flows have been derived from oil and gas prices calculated using an average of the first-day-of-the month price for each month within the 12 months ended December 31, 2012, pursuant to current SEC and FASB guidelines.
- (2) Estimated total proved reserves at July 31, 2013 were 396.3 MMBOE based on internal engineering with an associated pre-tax PV10% value of \$7.7 billion calculated using an average of the first-day-of-the month price for each month within the 12 months ended July 31, 2013, pursuant to current SEC and FASB guidelines. This number does not include any proved reserves attributable to our Postle properties, which we sold on July 15, 2013, or reflect the estimated 17.1 MMBOE associated with the Williston Basin assets for which we executed a purchase and sale agreement to acquire on August 26, 2013.
- (3) Pre-tax PV10% may be considered a non-GAAP financial measure as defined by the SEC and is derived from the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows, which is the most directly comparable GAAP financial measure. Pre-tax PV10% is computed on the same basis as the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows but without deducting future income taxes. We believe pre-tax PV10% is a useful measure for investors for evaluating the relative monetary significance of our oil and natural gas properties. We further believe investors may utilize our pre-tax PV10% as a basis for comparison of the relative size and value of our

proved reserves to other companies because many factors that are unique to each individual company impact the amount of future income taxes to be paid. Our management uses this measure when assessing the potential return on investment related to our oil and gas properties and acquisitions. However, pre-tax PV10% is not a substitute for the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows. Our pre-tax PV10% and the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows do not purport to present the fair value of our proved oil, NGL and natural gas reserves.

- (4) Includes total estimated proved reserves of 45.1 MMBOE as of December 31, 2012 and average daily net production of 7.6 MBOE/d for the six months ended June 30, 2013 attributable to our Postle properties, which we sold on July 15, 2013. See [Recent Developments](#) [Sale of Postle Properties](#) below for more information.

S-2

---

**Table of Contents****Business Strategy**

Our goal is to generate meaningful growth in our net asset value per share of proved reserves through the exploration, development and acquisition of oil and gas projects with attractive rates of return on capital employed. To date, we have pursued this goal through both continued field development in our core areas and the acquisition of reserves. Because of our extensive property base, we are pursuing several economically attractive oil and gas opportunities to exploit and develop properties as well as explore our acreage positions for additional production growth and proved reserves. Specifically, we have focused, and plan to continue to focus, on the following:

*Pursuing High-Return Organic Reserve Additions.* The development of large resource plays such as our Williston Basin project has become one of our central objectives. As of June 30, 2013, we have assembled approximately 1,096,500 gross (697,300 net) developed and undeveloped acres in the Williston Basin located in Montana and North Dakota. As of June 30, 2013, we had 20 drilling rigs operating in the Williston Basin. During 2012 and the first six months of 2013, the focus of our development has expanded beyond the Sanish field to include several additional areas in the Williston Basin such as the Lewis & Clark/Pronghorn, Hidden Bench/Tarpon, Missouri Breaks and Cassandra prospects. We have completed the construction of our gas processing plant located south of Belfield, North Dakota, which has a processing capacity of 30 MMcf/d and primarily processes production from the Pronghorn area. Currently, there is inlet compression in place to process 24 MMcf/d, and as of June 30, 2013, the plant was processing 14 MMcf/d. In November 2012, we began connecting other operators' wells to the plant. We intend to add inlet compression during 2013 in order to fully utilize the 30 MMcf/d processing capability. During the second quarter of 2013, we installed fractionation equipment to convert NGLs into propane and butane, which can then be sold locally for higher realized prices. Additionally, we completed construction on an oil terminal and a seven-mile oil transmission line to allow for the delivery of oil production from the Pronghorn prospect into the Bridger Four Bears and Bakken Link oil transmission systems. We expect the use of this terminal to reduce our transportation costs per barrel and increase our returns on the development of this prospect.

*Developing and Exploiting Existing Properties.* Our existing property base and our acquisitions over the past five years have provided us with numerous low-risk opportunities for exploitation and development drilling. As of December 31, 2012, we have identified a drilling inventory of over 2,400 gross wells that we believe will add substantial production over the next five years. Our drilling inventory consists of the development of our proved and non-proved reserves. Additionally, we have several opportunities to apply and expand enhanced recovery techniques that we expect will increase proved reserves and extend the productive lives of our mature fields. In 2005, we acquired the North Ward Estes field, located in the Permian Basin of West Texas. We have experienced significant production increases to date in this field through the use of secondary and tertiary recovery techniques, and we anticipate such production increases to continue over the next five to seven years. In this field, we are actively injecting water and CO<sub>2</sub> and executing extensive re-development, drilling and completion operations, as well as expanding our gas processing facilities, which will allow us to separate and inject approximately 240 MMcf/d of recycled CO<sub>2</sub> and thereby maximize our recovery of oil and gas from this reservoir.

*Growing Through Accretive Acquisitions.* From 2004 to June 30, 2013, we completed 16 separate significant acquisitions of producing properties for estimated proved reserves of 230.9 MMBOE, as of the effective dates of the acquisitions. On August 26, 2013, we executed a purchase and sale agreement to acquire for \$260.0 million the Williston Basin assets, which we estimated had proved reserves of 17.1 MMBOE as of the August 1, 2013 effective date of the acquisition. Our experienced team of management, land, engineering and geoscience professionals has developed and refined an acquisition program designed to increase reserves and complement our existing properties, including identifying and evaluating acquisition opportunities, closing purchases and then effectively managing properties we acquire. We intend to selectively pursue the acquisition of properties complementary to our core operating areas.

S-3

## **Table of Contents**

*Disciplined Financial Approach.* Our goal is to remain financially strong, yet flexible, through the prudent management of our balance sheet and active management of commodity price volatility. We have historically funded our acquisitions and growth activity through a combination of equity and debt issuances, bank borrowings, internally generated cash flow and certain oil and gas divestitures, as appropriate, to maintain our strong financial position. From time to time, we monetize non-core properties and use the net proceeds from these asset sales to repay debt under our credit facility as we did with the sale of our Postle properties, which we completed on July 15, 2013. To support cash flow generation on our existing properties and help ensure expected cash flows from acquired properties, we periodically enter into derivative contracts. Typically, we use costless collars and fixed price gas contracts to provide an attractive base commodity price level.

## **Competitive Strengths**

We believe that our key competitive strengths lie in our balanced asset portfolio, our experienced management and technical team and our commitment to effective application of new technologies.

*Balanced, Long-Lived Asset Base.* As of December 31, 2012, we had interests in 10,218 gross (3,927 net) productive wells across approximately 1,277,400 gross (680,300 net) developed acres in our five core geographical areas. We believe this geographic mix of properties and organic drilling opportunities, combined with our continuing business strategy of acquiring and exploiting properties in these areas, presents us with multiple opportunities to execute our strategy. Our proved reserve life is approximately 12.6 years based on year-end 2012 proved reserves and 2012 production.

*Experienced Management Team.* Our management team averages 28 years of experience in the oil and gas industry. Our personnel have extensive experience in each of our core geographical areas and in all of our operational disciplines. In addition, each of our acquisition professionals has at least 29 years of experience in the evaluation, acquisition and operational assimilation of oil and gas properties.

*Commitment to Technology.* In each of our core operating areas, we have accumulated detailed geologic and geophysical knowledge and have developed significant technical and operational expertise. In recent years, we have developed considerable expertise in conventional and 3-D seismic imaging and interpretation. As of June 30, 2013, our technical team has access to approximately 7,241 square miles of 3-D seismic data, digital well logs and other subsurface information. This data is analyzed with advanced geophysical and geological computer resources dedicated to the accurate and efficient characterization of the subsurface oil and gas reservoirs that comprise our asset base. In addition, our information systems enable us to update our production databases through daily uploads from hand held computers in the field. We have a team of 10 professionals averaging over 24 years of expertise managing CO<sub>2</sub> floods, which provides us with the ability to pursue CO<sub>2</sub> flood targets and employ this technology to add reserves to our portfolio. This commitment to technology has increased the productivity and efficiency of our field operations and development activities.

In 2011, we completed the build-out and installation of our in-house rock analysis laboratory. This state-of-the-art facility includes two scanning electron microscopes ( SEM ), and these SEMs enable rapid turnaround analysis of drilling or cored wells designed to support real-time drilling and completion decisions. These SEMs also allow us to quantify porosity networks, which in turn helps our staff comparatively evaluate producing zones in present and future plays under consideration. In addition, having SEMs in-house allows our team of experts to analyze samples more rapidly than an outside service company would and with the full operational context that only full-time employees possess, while protecting our proprietary data. Furthermore, we have established a core layout facility capable of displaying several hundred feet of core slabs under plain or ultraviolet light. The ability for multidisciplinary groups such as geoscientists, operations personnel, reservoir engineers, drilling engineers and senior management to discuss

technical issues over the displayed cores has helped us become a leader in tight oil play exploration and development.

S-4

## **Table of Contents**

Over the past few years, we utilized our Drill Well on Paper optimization process to significantly reduce the number of days it takes to drill a well. Due to the success of this program, we expanded the concept using a program called Build-to-POP in September 2012. The objective of this program is to optimize the process from the time we build a drilling location to the time we put a well on production ( POP ), to reduce our overall cycle time. Early results have reduced the time from spud to POP from just under 91 days per well to approximately 67 days per well. We have realized additional reductions in the amount of time required to move a rig from one location to the next. Our rig move times have dropped from approximately nine days to just over seven days. We plan to take what we have learned with this project in the Williston Basin and apply these processes to our Redtail prospect in Colorado.

As the Bakken project in the Williston Basin matures and wells are drilled across large areas of the Williston Basin, we have assembled a more comprehensive database of information. This provides the opportunity to apply more scientific analysis of the data and to develop tools to assist our petro-technical staff with well and completion designs. In mid-2012, we initiated a study with a major service provider to review, analyze and make refinements to our fracture stimulations. Results from this study have enhanced our ability to numerically model fracture stimulations and to make refinements to increase the effectiveness of these stimulations and improve well performance.

## **Recent Developments**

### ***Sale of Postle Properties***

On July 15, 2013, we completed the sale to BreitBurn Operating L.P. of our interests in certain oil and gas producing properties located in our enhanced oil recovery projects in the Postle and Northeast Hardesty fields in Texas County, Oklahoma, including the related Dry Trail plant gathering and processing facilities, oil delivery pipeline, 60% interest in the 120-mile Transpetco CO<sub>2</sub> pipeline, CO<sub>2</sub> supply contracts, certain crude oil swap contracts and other related assets and liabilities (collectively the Postle properties ), effective April 1, 2013, for a cash purchase price of \$836.9 million after selling costs and closing adjustments, which is also subject to post-closing adjustments. We used the net proceeds from this transaction to repay a portion of the debt outstanding under the senior secured credit facility of our wholly-owned subsidiary, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation (the credit facility ). The Postle properties had estimated proved reserves of 45.1 MMBOE as of December 31, 2012, representing 11.9% of our proved reserves as of that date, and generated 8% (or 7.6 MBOE/d) of our June 2013 average daily net production.

### ***Acquisition of Williston Basin Assets***

On August 26, 2013, we executed a purchase and sale agreement to acquire certain producing oil and gas wells and development acreage in the Williston Basin in Williams and McKenzie Counties of North Dakota and Roosevelt and Richland Counties of Montana for an aggregate purchase price of \$260.0 million, subject to customary adjustments. We estimate that the Williston Basin assets had proved reserves of 17.1 MMBOE as of the August 1, 2013 effective date of the acquisition and average daily production of 2.4 MBOE/d for the month of August 2013. The acquisition is expected to close by September 30, 2013, subject to customary closing conditions. We expect to fund the purchase price with a portion of the proceeds of this offering. The Williston Basin assets acquisition is not conditioned upon the closing of this offering. This offering is not conditioned upon, and may be settled before, the closing of the Williston Basin assets acquisition.

### ***Reduction in Commitments under Credit Facility***

On September 9, 2013, we provided notice to the lenders under the credit facility to reduce the aggregate commitments under the credit facility from \$2.15 billion to \$1.2 billion upon the completion of this offering. As of June 30, 2013, on a pro forma basis giving effect to the sale of the Postle properties, which occurred on

S-5



---

## **Table of Contents**

July 15, 2013, and after giving effect to this offering, the application of the net proceeds therefrom and the reduction in commitments under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility upon consummation of this offering, we would have had no borrowings and \$2.4 million in letters of credit outstanding under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility with \$1,197.6 million of available borrowing capacity.

### ***Accelerated Development of Redtail Niobrara Area***

As of June 30, 2013, we held a total of approximately 120,500 gross (87,600 net) acres in our Redtail area, located in the Denver Julesberg Basin in Weld County, Colorado. Our Redtail acreage produces from the Niobrara B zone and is also prospective in the Niobrara A and C zones as well as the Codell formation. Subsequent to June 30, 2013, we acquired an additional 47,800 gross (32,000 net) acres in our Redtail area. Including this transaction, the average acquisition price for acreage in our Redtail area equals \$431 per net acre.

Highlighting our recent drilling results at Redtail was the completion of the Razor 33-2813H, which flowed 966 Bbl of oil and 620 Mcf of gas for a total of 1,069 BOE/d from the Niobrara B zone on July 9, 2013. The well's 6,047-foot lateral was fracture stimulated in a total of 32 stages using our new frac design. We hold a 73.4% working interest and a 61.6% net revenue interest in this well, which was drilled on a 960-acre spacing unit. We have also applied this new frac design to our 640-acre spacing unit wells with positive results. The Razor 25-2514H flowed 593 Bbl of oil and 255 Mcf of gas, for a total of 636 BOE/d from the Niobrara B zone on June 30, 2013. The well's 3,716-foot lateral was fracture stimulated in a total of 18 stages. We hold an 87.5% working interest and a 70.3% net revenue interest in this well. In the eastern portion of the Redtail area, we recently completed the Wildhorse 04-0424H using our new frac design. The well flowed 596 Bbl of oil and 973 Mcf of gas, for a total of 758 BOE/d from the Niobrara B zone on July 28, 2013. The well's 3,657-foot lateral was fracture stimulated in a total of 24 stages. We hold a 100% working interest and a 80.0% net revenue interest in this well.

We currently have two drilling rigs running at Redtail and plan to add a third rig in October 2013. Our development plan for the Redtail prospect is to drill eight wells per spacing unit targeting the Niobrara B zone and four wells in each spacing unit targeting the Niobrara A zone. We estimate that we have more than 2,400 gross locations and 1,200 net locations at our Redtail prospect based on this development pattern. We plan to test tighter spacing in the Niobrara A / B reservoir system, with the potential to drill up to 16 wells per spacing unit versus our current 12-well plan.

### ***Accumulation of Acreage in New Oil Resource Plays in New Basins for Whiting***

We have recently acquired approximately 593,800 gross (509,000) net acres in three new oil resource plays, which are located in three separate basin areas that are new to us, for a total cost of \$112.2 million or at an average cost of \$220 per net acre.

## **Corporate Information**

Our principal executive offices are located at 1700 Broadway, Suite 2300, Denver, Colorado 80290-2300, and our telephone number is (303) 837-1661.

Table of Contents**The Offering**

The following is a brief summary of some of the terms of this offering. As used in this section, the terms we, us or our refer to Whiting Petroleum Corporation and not any of its subsidiaries. For a more complete description of the notes, see Description of Notes in this prospectus supplement and Description of Debt Securities in the accompanying prospectus.

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Issuer        | Whiting Petroleum Corporation   |
| Notes offered | <p>\$ _____ aggregate principal amount of _____ % Senior Notes due 2019 (the 2019 notes ).</p> <p>\$ _____ aggregate principal amount of _____ % Senior Notes due 2021 (the 2021 notes ).</p>   |
| Maturity date | The 2019 notes will mature on _____, 2019 and the 2021 notes will mature on _____, 2021.  |
| Interest      | Interest will accrue on the 2019 notes at the rate of _____ % per annum, and on the 2021 notes at the rate of _____ % per annum, in each case from September _____, 2013. Interest will be paid semi-annually in arrears on each _____ and _____, commencing _____, 2014.   |
| Guarantee     | The notes will be unconditionally guaranteed by our only existing material subsidiary, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation (the note guarantor ), and by our future material domestic subsidiaries on a senior unsecured basis.   |
| Ranking       | <p>The notes and note guarantee will be our and the note guarantor's senior unsecured obligations and will:</p> <p>rank equally in right of payment with all of our and the note guarantor's senior indebtedness;</p> <p>rank senior in right of payment to all of our and the note guarantor's subordinated indebtedness, including our outstanding senior subordinated notes;</p> |

rank effectively junior to any of our and the note guarantor's secured indebtedness to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness, including the indebtedness under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility; and

rank effectively junior to the obligations of any of our subsidiaries that do not guarantee the notes, to the extent of the assets of such subsidiaries.

As of June 30, 2013, on a pro forma basis after giving effect to the sale of the Postle properties, which occurred on July 15, 2013, and after giving effect to this offering and the application of the net proceeds thereof as described under Use of Proceeds, we would have had no borrowings and \$2.4 million in letters of credit outstanding under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility, as well as, \$1,800.0 million of senior debt consisting of the notes and \$350.0 million of senior subordinated debt consisting of our outstanding 6.5% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2018.

**Table of Contents**

Optional redemption

On or after the date that is three months prior to maturity of each series of notes, we may redeem all or part of the notes of such series at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount, together with accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to the date of redemption.

Prior to the dates referred to above, we may also redeem all or a part of the notes of either series at the make-whole redemption price described in this prospectus supplement, together with accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to the date of redemption.

Change of control

If a change of control event occurs and is followed by a rating decline as described in the indenture, each holder of notes may require us to repurchase all or a portion of its notes at a price equal to 101% of the principal amount of the notes, plus any accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to the date of repurchase.

Certain covenants

The indenture governing the notes will contain covenants that, among other things, will limit our ability and the ability of our restricted subsidiaries to:

pay dividends on, redeem or repurchase our capital stock or redeem or repurchase debt that is subordinated to the notes,

make investments,

incur additional indebtedness or issue preferred stock,

create certain liens,

sell assets,

enter into agreements that restrict dividends or other payments from our restricted subsidiaries to us,

consolidate, merge or transfer all or substantially all of the assets of us and our restricted subsidiaries taken as a whole,

engage in transactions with affiliates, and

create unrestricted subsidiaries.

These covenants are subject to important exceptions and qualifications that are described under the heading "Description of Notes" in this prospectus supplement. In addition, certain of these covenants will terminate if the notes achieve an investment grade rating as specified herein.

Denominations

The notes will only be issued in denominations of \$2,000 and any integral multiple of \$1,000 in excess thereof.

Use of proceeds

We expect to use the net proceeds from this offering to repay all of the debt outstanding under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility, to fund our \$260.0 million acquisition of the Williston Basin assets, to retire our \$250.0 million of outstanding 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014 on or prior to their maturity on February 1, 2014 and for general corporate purposes including capital expenditures. See "Use of Proceeds."

**Table of Contents**

Conflicts of interest

Affiliates of all of the underwriters are lenders under our credit facility, and accordingly, will receive a portion of the proceeds from this offering in the form of the repayment of borrowings under such facility. In addition, certain of the underwriters or their affiliates are holders of our outstanding 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014 and, accordingly, may receive a portion of the net proceeds of this offering in connection with the retirement of such notes. Because more than five percent of the net proceeds, not including underwriting compensation, is expected to be paid to affiliates of members of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. participating in the offering, the offering will be conducted in accordance with FINRA Rule 5121. Pursuant to such rule, Raymond James & Associates, Inc. acted as the qualified independent underwriter in pricing this offering and conducting due diligence. We have agreed to indemnify Raymond James & Associates, Inc. against liabilities incurred in connection with acting as a qualified independent underwriter, including liabilities under the Securities Act. See Underwriting (Conflicts of Interest).

Absence of a public market

The notes are new securities and there is currently no established market for the notes. Accordingly, we cannot assure the development or liquidity of any market for the notes. The underwriters have advised us that they currently intend to make a market in the notes. However, they are not obligated to do so, and they may discontinue any market making with respect to the notes without notice. We do not intend to apply for a listing of the notes on any securities exchange or for the inclusion of the notes on any automated dealer quotation system.

Risk factors

Please read Risk Factors and the other information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus for a discussion of factors you should carefully consider before deciding to invest in the notes.

**Table of Contents****Summary Historical and Unaudited Pro Forma Financial Information**

The following summary historical financial information for the year ended December 31, 2012 and as of December 31, 2012 has been derived from, and is qualified by reference to, our audited consolidated financial statements and related notes. The following summary historical financial information for the six months ended June 30, 2013 and as of June 30, 2013 has been derived from, and is qualified by reference to, our unaudited consolidated financial statements and related notes. This information is only a summary and you should read it in conjunction with our financial statements and related notes incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement. The unaudited interim period financial information, in our opinion, includes all adjustments, which are normal and recurring in nature, necessary for a fair presentation for the periods shown. Results for the six months ended June 30, 2013 are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the full fiscal year.

The following summary unaudited pro forma financial information for the year ended December 31, 2012 and the six months ended June 30, 2013 and as of June 30, 2013 has been derived from our unaudited pro forma financial statements and related notes. This information is only a summary and you should read it in conjunction with our unaudited pro forma financial statements and related notes incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement. The unaudited pro forma statements of operations for the year ended December 31, 2012 and the six months ended June 30, 2013 both give effect to the disposition of the Postle properties as if it had occurred on January 1, 2012. The unaudited pro forma balance sheet as of June 30, 2013 gives effect to the disposition of the Postle properties as if it had occurred on June 30, 2013. In our opinion, all adjustments that are necessary to present fairly the pro forma information have been made. The following unaudited pro forma financial statements do not purport to represent what our financial position or results of operations would have been if the disposition of the Postle properties had occurred on the dates indicated above, nor are they indicative of future financial position or results of operations. In addition, the unaudited pro forma financial statements do not give effect to this offering or the use of proceeds therefrom. These unaudited pro forma financial statements should be read in conjunction with our historical financial statements and related notes for the periods presented.

|  | <b>Year Ended<br/>December 31,<br/>2012</b> | <b>Pro Forma for<br/>the Year<br/>Ended<br/>December 31,<br/>2012</b> | <b>Six Months<br/>Ended June 30,<br/>2013</b> | <b>Pro Forma for<br/>the Six<br/>Months Ended<br/>June 30,<br/>2013</b> |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| <b>(In millions)</b>                   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Statement of Operations:</b>        |   |   |   |   |
| Revenues and other income:             |   |   |   |   |
| Oil, NGL and natural gas sales         | \$ 2,137.7                                  | \$ 1,898.2  | \$ 1,257.0                                    | \$ 1,145.9  |
| Gain (loss) on hedging activities      | 2.3   | 2.3   | (0.6)   | (0.6)   |
| Amortization of deferred gain on sale  | 29.5  | 29.5  | 15.9  | 15.9  |
| Gain on sale of properties             | 3.4   | 3.4   | 3.4   | 3.4   |
| Interest income and other              | 0.5   | 0.5   | 1.2   | 1.2   |
| <b>Total revenues and other income</b> | <b>2,173.4</b>                              | <b>1,933.9</b>  | <b>1,276.9</b>                                | <b>1,165.8</b>  |
| Costs and expenses:                    |   |   |   |   |
| Lease operating                        | 376.4                                       | 330.9   | 204.9   | 181.9   |
| Production taxes                       | 171.6                                       | 155.0   | 105.1   | 97.6  |

Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

|   |          |          |          |          |
|---|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Depreciation, depletion and amortization          | 684.7    | 629.4    | 424.6    | 400.0    |
| Exploration and impairment                        | 167.0    | 167.0    | 80.7     | 80.7     |
| General and administrative                        | 108.6    | 107.0    | 58.1     | 57.0     |
| Interest expense                                  | 75.2     | 58.4     | 44.6     | 35.4     |
| Change in Production Participation Plan liability | 13.8     | 13.8     | 12.1     | 12.1     |
| Commodity derivative (gain) loss, net             | (85.9)   | (85.9)   | 1.1      | (10.1)   |
| Total costs and expenses                          | 1,511.4  | 1,375.6  | 931.2    | 854.6    |
| Income before income taxes                        | 662.0    | 558.3    | 345.7    | 311.2    |
| Income tax expense (benefit):                     |          |          |          |          |
| Current   | (0.7)    | (41.0)   | (2.1)    | (15.5)   |
| Deferred  | 248.6    | 248.6    | 126.6    | 126.6    |
| Total income tax expense                          | 247.9    | 207.6    | 124.5    | 111.1    |
| Net income  | \$ 414.1 | \$ 350.7 | \$ 221.2 | \$ 200.1 |

**Balance Sheet Information:**

|                |            |            |
|----------------|------------|------------|
| Total assets   | \$ 8,117.7 | \$ 7,416.0 |
| Long-term debt | \$ 2,000.0 | \$ 1,249.0 |
| Total equity   | \$ 3,680.4 | \$ 3,785.5 |



**Table of Contents****Summary Historical Reserve and Operating Data**

The following tables present summary information regarding our estimated net proved oil and natural gas reserves as of December 31, 2010, 2011 and 2012 and our historical operating data for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2011 and 2012 and the six month periods ended June 30, 2012 and 2013. The reserve estimates presented in the table below are based on reports prepared by Cawley Gillespie & Associates, Inc., independent reserve engineers.

|  | As of December 31, |            |            |
|--|--------------------|------------|------------|
|  | 2010               | 2011       | 2012       |
| <b>Reserve Data:(1)</b>  |                    |            |            |
| Total estimated proved developed reserves:                             |                    |            |            |
| Oil (MBbl)   | 160,088            | 180,975    | 190,845    |
| NGLs (MBbl)  | 18,321             | 22,109     | 24,204     |
| Natural gas (MMcf)   | 220,530            | 211,297    | 160,893    |
| Total (MBOE)   | 215,164            | 238,300    | 241,864    |
| Total estimated proved reserves:                                       |                    |            |            |
| Oil (MBbl)   | 224,196            | 260,144    | 301,285    |
| NGLs (MBbl)  | 30,082             | 37,609     | 40,098     |
| Natural gas (MMcf)   | 303,544            | 284,975    | 224,264    |
| Total (MBOE)(2)  | 304,869            | 345,249    | 378,760    |
| Pre-tax PV10% value (in millions)(3)                                   | \$ 5,044.4         | \$ 7,404.7 | \$ 7,283.9 |
| Standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows (in millions) | \$ 3,667.6         | \$ 5,272.5 | \$ 5,407.0 |
| Total estimated probable reserves:                                     |                    |            |            |
| Oil (MBbl)   | 49,638             | 57,128     | 84,982     |
| NGLs (MBbl)  | 15,068             | 13,706     | 11,922     |
| Natural gas (MMcf)   | 212,201            | 210,874    | 109,582    |
| Total (MBOE)(2)  | 100,073            | 105,979    | 115,168    |
| Total estimated possible reserves:                                     |                    |            |            |
| Oil (MBbl)   | 146,313            | 129,066    | 123,179    |
| NGLs (MBbl)  | 36,702             | 34,987     | 21,936     |
| Natural gas (MMcf)   | 204,765            | 187,212    | 156,382    |
| Total (MBOE)(2)  | 217,142            | 195,255    | 171,178    |

- (1) Oil and gas reserve quantities and related discounted future net cash flows have been derived from oil and gas prices calculated using an average of the first-day-of-the month price for each month within the 12 months ended December 31, 2010, 2011 and 2012, respectively, pursuant to current SEC and FASB guidelines.
- (2) The proved, probable and possible reserves attributable to the Postle properties, which were sold on July 15, 2013, were 45,065 MBOE, 13,150 MBOE and 80 MBOE, respectively, as of December 31, 2012. See [Recent Developments Sale of Postle Properties](#) above for more information.
- (3) Pre-tax PV10% may be considered a non-GAAP financial measure as defined by the SEC and is derived from the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows, which is the most directly comparable GAAP financial measure. Pre-tax PV10% is computed on the same basis as the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows but without deducting future income taxes. We believe pre-tax PV10% is a useful measure for investors for evaluating the relative monetary significance of our oil and natural gas properties. We further believe investors may utilize our pre-tax PV10% as a basis for comparison of the relative size and value of our

proved reserves to other companies because many factors that are unique to each individual company impact the amount of future income taxes to be paid. Our management uses this measure when assessing the potential return on investment related to our oil and gas properties and

S-11

**Table of Contents**

acquisitions. However, pre-tax PV10% is not a substitute for the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows. Our pre-tax PV10% and the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows do not purport to present the fair value of our proved oil, NGL and natural gas reserves.

|   | Year Ended December 31, |            |            | Six Months Ended |            |
|---|-------------------------|------------|------------|------------------|------------|
|   | 2010                    | 2011       | 2012       | 2012             | 2013       |
| <b>Operating Data:</b>                                  |                         |            |            |                  |            |
| Net production:   |                         |            |            |                  |            |
| Oil (MMBbl)   | 17.5                    | 18.3       | 23.1       | 11.1             | 13.0       |
| NGLs (MMBbl)  | 1.5                     | 2.1        | 2.8        | 1.4              | 1.4        |
| Natural gas (Bcf)                                       | 27.4                    | 26.4       | 25.8       | 13.0             | 13.0       |
| Total production (MMBOE)(1)                             | 23.6                    | 24.8       | 30.2       | 14.7             | 16.5       |
| Net sales (in millions)                                 |                         |            |            |                  |            |
| Oil(2)  | \$ 1,268.2              | \$ 1,621.5 | \$ 1,940.5 | \$ 950.9         | \$ 1,148.1 |
| NGLs  | 74.0                    | 108.6      | 108.9      | 57.1             | 56.5       |
| Natural gas(2)  | 133.1                   | 130.0      | 88.3       | 43.5             | 52.4       |
| Total oil, NGL and natural gas sales                    | \$ 1,475.3              | \$ 1,860.1 | \$ 2,137.7 | \$ 1,051.5       | \$ 1,257.0 |
| Average sales prices:                                   |                         |            |            |                  |            |
| Oil (per Bbl)   | \$ 72.61                | \$ 88.61   | \$ 83.86   | \$ 85.21         | \$ 88.65   |
| Effect of oil hedges on average price (per Bbl)         | (1.47)                  | (1.67)     | (1.25)     | (1.94)           | (0.95)     |
| Oil net of hedging (per Bbl)                            | \$ 71.14                | \$ 86.94   | \$ 82.61   | \$ 83.27         | \$ 87.70   |
| Average NYMEX price (per Bbl)                           | \$ 79.55                | \$ 95.14   | \$ 94.19   | \$ 98.23         | \$ 94.28   |
| NGLs (per Bbl)  | \$ 47.33                | \$ 52.38   | \$ 39.36   | \$ 41.73         | \$ 40.20   |
| Natural gas (per Mcf)                                   | \$ 4.86                 | \$ 4.92    | \$ 3.42    | \$ 3.35          | \$ 4.04    |
| Effect of natural gas hedges on average price (per Mcf) | 0.04                    | 0.04       | 0.06       | 0.06             |            |
| Natural gas net of hedging (per Mcf)                    | \$ 4.90                 | \$ 4.96    | \$ 3.48    | \$ 3.41          | \$ 4.04    |
| Average NYMEX price (per Mcf)                           | \$ 4.39                 | \$ 4.04    | \$ 2.79    | \$ 2.47          | \$ 3.72    |
| Cost and expenses (per BOE):                            |                         |            |            |                  |            |
| Lease operating expenses                                | \$ 11.37                | \$ 12.33   | \$ 12.46   | \$ 12.54         | \$ 12.41   |
| Production taxes  | \$ 4.40                 | \$ 5.62    | \$ 5.68    | \$ 5.81          | \$ 6.36    |
| Depreciation, depletion and amortization expense        | \$ 16.69                | \$ 18.89   | \$ 22.67   | \$ 21.56         | \$ 25.70   |
| General and administrative expenses                     | \$ 2.74                 | \$ 3.43    | \$ 3.59    | \$ 4.06          | \$ 3.52    |

(1) The production attributable to the Postle properties, which were sold on July 15, 2013, was 3.4 MMBOE, 3.0 MMBOE and 3.0 MMBOE for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2011 and 2012, respectively, and 1.5

MMBOE and 1.4 MMBOE for the six months ended June 30, 2012 and 2013, respectively.  
(2) Before consideration of hedging transactions.

S-12

**Table of Contents****Summary Historical Financial Information**

The following summary historical financial information for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2011 and 2012 and as of December 31, 2010, 2011 and 2012 has been derived from, and is qualified by reference to, our audited consolidated financial statements and related notes. The following summary historical financial information for the six months ended June 30, 2012 and 2013 and as of June 30, 2012 and 2013 has been derived from, and is qualified by reference to, our unaudited consolidated financial statements and related notes. This information is only a summary and you should read it in conjunction with our financial statements and related notes incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus. The unaudited interim period financial information, in our opinion, includes all adjustments, which are normal and recurring in nature, necessary for a fair presentation for the periods shown. Results for the six months ended June 30, 2013 are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the full fiscal year.

|   | Year Ended December 31,              |                |                | Six Months Ended |                |
|---|--------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
|   | 2010                                 | 2011           | 2012           | 2012             | 2013           |
|   | (In millions, except per share data) |                |                |                  |                |
| <b>Consolidated Statements of Income Information:</b> |                                      |                |                |                  |                |
| Revenues and other income:                            |                                      |                |                |                  |                |
| Oil, NGL and natural gas sales                        | \$ 1,475.3                           | \$ 1,860.1     | \$ 2,137.7     | \$ 1,051.5       | \$ 1,257.0     |
| Gain (loss) on hedging activities                     | 23.2                                 | 8.8            | 2.3            | 1.9              | (0.6)          |
| Amortization of deferred gain on sale                 | 15.6                                 | 13.9           | 29.5           | 12.6             | 15.9           |
| Gain (loss) on sale of properties                     | 1.4                                  | 16.3           | 3.4            | (0.4)            | 3.4            |
| Interest income and other                             | 0.6                                  | 0.5            | 0.5            | 0.3              | 1.2            |
| <b>Total revenues and other income</b>                | <b>1,516.1</b>                       | <b>1,899.6</b> | <b>2,173.4</b> | <b>1,065.9</b>   | <b>1,276.9</b> |
| Costs and expenses:                                   |                                      |                |                |                  |                |
| Lease operating                                       | 268.3                                | 305.5          | 376.4          | 184.3            | 204.9          |
| Production taxes                                      | 103.9                                | 139.2          | 171.6          | 85.4             | 105.1          |
| Depreciation, depletion and amortization              | 393.9                                | 468.2          | 684.7          | 316.7            | 424.6          |
| Exploration and impairment                            | 59.4                                 | 84.6           | 167.0          | 55.5             | 80.7           |
| General and administrative                            | 64.7                                 | 85.0           | 108.6          | 59.6             | 58.1           |
| Interest expense                                      | 59.1                                 | 62.5           | 75.2           | 36.3             | 44.6           |
| Loss on early extinguishment of debt                  | 6.2                                  |                |                |                  |                |
| Change in Production Participation Plan liability     | 12.1                                 | (0.9)          | 13.8           |                  | 12.1           |
| Commodity derivative (gain) loss, net                 | 7.1                                  | (24.8)         | (85.9)         | (70.6)           | 1.1            |
| <b>Total costs and expenses</b>                       | <b>974.7</b>                         | <b>1,119.3</b> | <b>1,511.4</b> | <b>667.2</b>     | <b>931.2</b>   |
| Income before income taxes                            | 541.4                                | 780.3          | 662.0          | 398.7            | 345.7          |
| Income tax expense                                    | 204.8                                | 288.7          | 247.9          | 149.4            | 124.5          |
| Net income  | 336.7                                | 491.6          | 414.1          | 249.3            | 221.2          |
| Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest      |                                      | 0.1            | 0.1            | 0.1              |                |

Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

|   |            |              |              |            |              |
|---|------------|--------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| Net income available to shareholders                | 336.7      | 491.7        | 414.2        | 249.4      | 221.2        |
| Preferred stock dividends(1)                        | (64.0)     | (1.1)        | (1.1)        | (0.5)      | (0.5)        |
| Net income available to common shareholders         | \$ 272.7   | \$ 490.6     | \$ 413.1     | \$ 248.8   | \$ 220.7     |
| Earnings per common share, basic(2)                 | \$ 2.57    | \$ 4.18      | \$ 3.51      | \$ 2.12    | \$ 1.87      |
| Earnings per common share, diluted(2)               | \$ 2.55    | \$ 4.14      | \$ 3.48      | \$ 2.10    | \$ 1.86      |
| <b>Other Financial Information:</b>                 |            |              |              |            |              |
| Net cash provided by operating activities           | \$ 997.3   | \$ 1,192.1   | \$ 1,401.2   | \$ 635.2   | \$ 740.2     |
| Net cash used in investing activities               | \$ (914.6) | \$ (1,760.0) | \$ (1,780.3) | \$ (677.9) | \$ (1,203.1) |
| Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities | \$ (75.7)  | \$ 564.8     | \$ 408.1     | \$ 33.7    | \$ 441.4     |
| Capital expenditures                                | \$ 923.8   | \$ 1,804.3   | \$ 2,171.5   | \$ 1,069.4 | \$ 1,238.9   |
| <b>Consolidated Balance Sheet Information:</b>      |            |              |              |            |              |
| Total assets  | \$4,648.8  | \$ 6,045.6   | \$ 7,272.4   | \$6,510.6  | \$ 8,117.7   |
| Long-term debt                                      | \$ 800.0   | \$ 1,380.0   | \$ 1,800.0   | \$ 1,420.0 | \$ 2,000.0   |
| Total equity  | \$2,531.3  | \$ 3,029.1   | \$ 3,453.2   | \$ 3,279.8 | \$ 3,680.4   |

S-13

**Table of Contents**

- (1) The year ended December 31, 2010 includes a cash premium of \$47.5 million for the induced conversion of our 6.25% Perpetual Preferred Stock.
- (2) On January 26, 2011, our Board of Directors approved a two-for-one split of the Company's shares of common stock to be effected in the form of a stock dividend effective February 22, 2011. Earnings per common share, basic and diluted for periods prior to February 2011 have been retroactively adjusted to reflect the stock split.

**Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges**

The following table presents our ratios of consolidated earnings to fixed charges for the periods presented.

|                                       | Six Months Ended<br>June 30, 2013 |        | 2012 Pro<br>Forma(1) | Years Ended December 31,<br>Actual |        |       |      |       |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------|----------------------|------------------------------------|--------|-------|------|-------|
|                                       | Pro Forma(1)                      | Actual |                      | 2012                               | 2011   | 2010  | 2009 | 2008  |
| Ratio of earnings to fixed charges(2) |                                   | 8.59x  |                      | 9.36x                              | 12.63x | 9.61x | (3)  | 6.92x |

- (1) The pro forma ratio of earnings to fixed charges were calculated on a pro forma basis after giving effect to the issuance of the notes offered hereby and the use of proceeds therefrom to repay all of the debt outstanding under the credit facility and retire our outstanding 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014.
- (2) For purposes of calculating the ratios above, earnings consist of income (loss) before income taxes and before income or loss from equity investees, plus fixed charges and amortization of capitalized interest and distributed income of equity investees, less capitalized interest. Fixed charges consist of interest expensed, interest capitalized, amortized premiums, discounts and capitalized expenses related to indebtedness and an estimate of interest within rental expense.
- (3) For the year ended December 31, 2009, earnings were inadequate to cover fixed charges, and the ratio of earnings to fixed charges therefore has not been presented for that period. The coverage deficiency necessary for the ratio of earnings to fixed charges to equal 1.00x (one-to-one coverage) was \$165.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2009.

Table of Contents

**RISK FACTORS**

Each of the risks described below should be carefully considered, together with all of the other information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus, before making an investment decision with respect to the notes. If any of the following risks or other risks not currently known to us or that we currently deem to be immaterial develop into actual events, our business, financial condition or results of operations could be materially and adversely affected, and you may lose all or part of your investment.

***Risks Related to the Notes***

**Our debt level and the covenants in the agreements governing our debt could negatively impact our financial condition, results of operations, cash flows and business prospects and prevent us from fulfilling our obligations under the notes.**

As of June 30, 2013, on a pro forma basis giving effect to the sale of the Postle properties, which occurred on July 15, 2013, and after giving effect to this offering, the application of the net proceeds therefrom and the reduction in commitments under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility upon consummation of this offering, we would have had no borrowings and \$2.4 million in letters of credit outstanding under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility with \$1,197.6 million of available borrowing capacity, as well as \$1,800.0 million of senior notes and \$350.0 million of senior subordinated notes outstanding.

We are permitted to incur additional indebtedness, provided we meet certain requirements in the indenture that will govern the notes, the indentures governing our senior subordinated notes and Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility.

Our level of indebtedness and the covenants contained in the agreements governing our debt could have important consequences for our operations, including:

requiring us to dedicate a substantial portion of our cash flow from operations to required payments on debt, thereby reducing the availability of cash flow for working capital, capital expenditures and other general business activities;

limiting our ability to obtain additional financing in the future for working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions and general corporate and other activities;

limiting our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in our business and the industry in which we operate;

placing us at a competitive disadvantage relative to other less leveraged competitors; and

making us vulnerable to increases in interest rates, because debt under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement is subject to certain rate variability.



We may be required to repay all or a portion of our debt, including the notes, on an accelerated basis in certain circumstances. If we fail to comply with the covenants and other restrictions in the agreements governing our debt, including the notes, it could lead to an event of default and the acceleration of our repayment of outstanding debt, including the notes. Our ability to comply with these covenants and other restrictions may be affected by events beyond our control, including prevailing economic and financial conditions. Moreover, the borrowing base limitation on Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement is periodically redetermined based on an evaluation of our oil and gas reserves. Upon a redetermination, if borrowings in excess of the revised borrowing capacity were outstanding, we could be forced to immediately repay a portion of our debt under the credit agreement.

We may not have sufficient funds to make such repayments, including under the notes. If we are unable to repay our debt out of cash on hand, we could attempt to refinance such debt, sell assets or repay such debt with

S-15

**Table of Contents**

the proceeds from an equity offering. We may not be able to generate sufficient cash flow to pay the interest on our debt or future borrowings, and equity financings or proceeds from the sale of assets may not be available to pay or refinance such debt. The terms of our debt, including Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement, may also prohibit us from taking such actions. Factors that will affect our ability to raise cash through an offering of our capital stock, a refinancing of our debt or a sale of assets include financial market conditions and our market value and operating performance at the time of such offering or other financing. We may not be able to successfully complete any such offering, refinancing or sale of assets.

**The instruments governing our indebtedness contain various covenants limiting the discretion of our management in operating our business.**

The indenture that will govern the notes, the indentures governing our senior subordinated notes and Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement contain various restrictive covenants that may limit our management's discretion in certain respects. In particular, these agreements will limit our and our subsidiaries' ability to, among other things:

pay dividends on, redeem or repurchase our capital stock or redeem or repurchase the notes or our subordinated debt;

make loans to others;

make investments;

incur additional indebtedness or issue preferred stock;

create certain liens;

sell assets;

enter into agreements that restrict dividends or other payments from our restricted subsidiaries to us;

consolidate, merge or transfer all or substantially all of our assets and those of our restricted subsidiaries taken as a whole;

engage in transactions with affiliates;

enter into hedging contracts;

create unrestricted subsidiaries; and

enter into sale and leaseback transactions.

In addition, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement requires us, as of the last day of any quarter, (i) to not exceed a total debt to the last four quarters' EBITDAX ratio (as defined in the credit agreement) of 4.0 to 1.0 and (ii) to have a consolidated current assets to consolidated current liabilities ratio (as defined in the credit agreement and which includes an add back of the available borrowing capacity under the credit agreement) of not less than 1.0 to 1.0. Also, the indenture that will govern the notes and the indentures under which we issued our senior subordinated notes restrict us from incurring additional indebtedness, subject to certain exceptions, unless our fixed charge coverage ratio (as defined in the indentures) is at least 2.0 to 1. If we were in violation of these covenants, then we may not be able to incur additional indebtedness, including under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement. A substantial or extended decline in oil or natural gas prices may adversely affect our ability to comply with these covenants.

If we fail to comply with the restrictions in the indenture that will govern the notes, the indentures governing our senior subordinated notes or Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement or any other subsequent financing agreements, a default may allow the creditors, if the agreements so provide, to accelerate the related indebtedness as well as any other indebtedness to which a cross-acceleration or cross-default provision applies. In addition, lenders may be able to terminate any commitments they had made to make further funds available to us.

---

**Table of Contents**

**The notes are effectively subordinated to our secured debt and the secured debt of the subsidiary guarantor of the notes.**

The notes will be our senior unsecured obligations and will effectively be subordinated to any of our secured indebtedness and the secured indebtedness of Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation (which is a wholly owned subsidiary of ours and a subsidiary guarantor of the notes) to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness. In the event of our or the guarantor's bankruptcy, liquidation, reorganization or other winding up, our assets or the assets of the guarantor, as applicable, that secure our secured debt will be available to pay obligations on the notes and guarantee only after the secured debt has been repaid in full from these assets. There may not be sufficient assets remaining to pay amounts due on any or all of the notes and guarantees then outstanding.

**As a holding company, we rely on payments from Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation in order for us to make payments on the notes.**

We are a holding company with no significant operations of our own. Because our operations are conducted through our wholly owned subsidiary, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation, we depend on dividends, advances and other payments from Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation in order to allow us to satisfy our financial obligations. Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation is a separate and distinct legal entity and has no obligation to pay any amounts to us, whether by dividends, advances or other payments. The ability of Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation to pay dividends and make other payments to us depends on its earnings, capital requirements and general financial conditions and is restricted by, among other things, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement, applicable corporate and other laws and regulations as well as agreements to which Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation may be a party. Specifically, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement allows it to make payments to us so that we may pay interest on the notes, but does not allow for payments from it to us to pay principal on the notes. Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement also prohibits Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation from allowing us to make any principal payments on the notes. Although Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation is guaranteeing the notes, the guarantee is subordinated to all of its secured debt, including the indebtedness under the credit facility.

**Servicing our debt requires a significant amount of cash, and we may not have sufficient cash flow from our business to pay our substantial debt.**

Our ability to make scheduled payments of the principal of, to pay interest on or to refinance our indebtedness, including the notes, depends on our future performance, which is subject to economic, financial, competitive and other factors beyond our control. Our business may not continue to generate cash flow from operations in the future sufficient to service our debt and make necessary capital expenditures. If we are unable to generate such cash flow, we may be required to adopt one or more alternatives, such as selling assets, restructuring debt or obtaining additional equity capital on terms that may be onerous or highly dilutive. Our ability to refinance our indebtedness will depend on the capital markets and our financial condition at such time. We may not be able to engage in any of these activities or engage in these activities on desirable terms, which could result in a default on our debt obligations.

**Despite our current debt levels, we may still incur substantially more debt or take other actions which would intensify the risks discussed above.**

Despite our current consolidated debt levels, we and our subsidiaries may be able to incur substantial additional debt in the future. Although the indenture that will govern the notes will contain, and the indentures governing our senior subordinated notes and Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility contain, restrictions on the incurrence of additional indebtedness, these restrictions are subject to a number of qualifications and exceptions, and the additional indebtedness incurred in compliance with these restrictions could be substantial. If we incur any additional

indebtedness that ranks equally with the notes, the holders of that debt will be entitled to share ratably with you in any proceeds distributed in connection with any insolvency, liquidation, reorganization, dissolution or other winding up of our company. This may have the effect of reducing the amount of proceeds paid to you. These restrictions also will not prevent us from incurring obligations that do

S-17

## **Table of Contents**

not constitute indebtedness. In addition, after giving effect to this offering, the application of the net proceeds therefrom and the reduction in commitments under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility upon consummation of this offering, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement will have unused commitments of \$1,197.6 million.

### **We may not be able to repurchase the notes upon a change of control and your rights upon a change of control may be limited.**

Upon the occurrence of certain change of control events followed by a rating decline within 90 days as specified in the indenture, holders of the notes may require us to repurchase all or any part of their notes. The occurrence of these same change of control events would also obligate us to offer to repurchase our outstanding 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014 and 6.5% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2018, although the covenants governing those notes do not contain a requirement for a rating decline, and they could be entitled to be repurchased in circumstances where the notes offered hereby do not have such a right. We may not have sufficient funds at the time of the change of control to make the required repurchases of the notes. Additionally, certain events that would constitute a change of control (as defined in the indenture) would constitute an event of default under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement that would, if it should occur, permit the lenders to accelerate the debt outstanding under such credit agreement and that, in turn, would cause an event of default under the indenture. We would not be permitted to repurchase the notes prior to termination of and payment in full of the obligations under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement.

The source of funds for any repurchase required as a result of any change of control will be our available cash or cash generated from oil and gas operations or other sources, including borrowings, sales of assets, sales of equity or funds provided by a new controlling entity. We cannot assure you, however, that sufficient funds would be available at the time of any change of control to make any required repurchases of the notes, the 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014 and 6.5% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2018 tendered and to repay debt under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit agreement. Furthermore, using available cash to fund the potential consequences of a change of control may impair our ability to obtain additional financing in the future. Any future credit agreements or other agreements relating to debt to which we may become a party will most likely contain similar restrictions and provisions.

Recent Delaware court decisions have held that the continuing director element of the definition of change of control may be interpreted by the courts in a manner that permits the board of directors of a Delaware corporation to approve a slate of directors proposed by a third party in a hostile proxy contest for the purposes of avoiding triggering a change of control under an indenture, even where the board of directors has actively opposed the election of such directors. As such, the ability of holders to require us to offer to purchase their notes as a result of a successful hostile proxy contest for our board of directors may be limited.

### **We cannot assure you that an active trading market will develop for the notes.**

Prior to this offering, there has been no trading market for the notes. We do not intend to apply for listing of the notes on any securities exchange or to arrange for quotation on any interdealer quotation system. We have been informed by the underwriters that they intend to make a market in the notes after the offering is completed. However, the underwriters may cease their market-making at any time without notice. In addition, the liquidity of the trading market in the notes, and the market price quoted for the notes, may be adversely affected by changes in the overall market for this type of security and by changes in our financial performance or prospects or in the prospects for companies in our industry generally. In addition, such market-making activities will be subject to limits imposed by the United States federal securities laws. As a result, we cannot assure you that an active trading market will develop for the notes. If an

active trading market does not develop or is not maintained, the market price and liquidity of the notes may be adversely affected. In that case you may not be able to sell your notes at a particular time or you may not be able to sell your notes at a favorable price.

S-18

**Table of Contents**

**Any subsidiary guarantees of the notes may be subordinated or avoided by a court.**

Initially, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation will guarantee the notes on a senior basis and in the future, the notes will be guaranteed by certain of our newly created or acquired subsidiaries and by certain restricted subsidiaries. See Description of Notes Certain Covenants Additional Subsidiary Guarantees. These guarantees will be joint and several obligations of the guarantors. Various applicable fraudulent conveyance laws have been enacted for the protection of creditors. A court may use those laws to subordinate or avoid any guarantee of the notes issued by any of our subsidiaries.

A court could avoid or subordinate the guarantee of the notes by any of our subsidiaries in favor of that subsidiary's other debts or liabilities to the extent that the court determined either of the following were true at the time the subsidiary issued the guarantee:

that subsidiary incurred the guarantee with the intent to hinder, delay or defraud any of its present or future creditors or that such subsidiary contemplated insolvency with a design to favor one or more creditors to the total or partial exclusion of others; or

that subsidiary did not receive fair consideration or reasonably equivalent value for issuing the guarantee and, at the time it issued the guarantee, that subsidiary:

was insolvent or rendered insolvent by reason of the issuance of the guarantee;

was engaged or about to engage in a business or transaction for which the remaining assets of that subsidiary constituted unreasonably small capital; or

intended to incur, or believed that it would incur, debts beyond its ability to pay such debts as they matured.

Among other things, a legal challenge of a subsidiary's guarantee of the notes on fraudulent conveyance grounds may focus on the benefits, if any, realized by that subsidiary as a result of our issuance of the notes. To the extent a subsidiary's guarantee of the notes is avoided as a result of fraudulent conveyance or held unenforceable for any other reason, the note holders would cease to have any claim in respect of that guarantee and would be creditors solely of ours.

**Claims of noteholders will be structurally subordinated to claims of creditors of any of our subsidiaries that do not guarantee the notes.**

We conduct all of our operations through our subsidiaries. Subject to certain limitations, the indenture governing the notes permits us to form or acquire certain subsidiaries that are not guarantors of the notes and to permit such non-guarantor subsidiaries to acquire assets and incur indebtedness, and noteholders would not have any claim as a creditor against any of our non-guarantor subsidiaries to the assets and earnings of those subsidiaries. The claims of the creditors of those subsidiaries, including their trade creditors, banks and other lenders, would have priority over any of our claims or those of our other subsidiaries as equity holders of the non-guarantor subsidiaries. Consequently,



in any insolvency, liquidation, reorganization, dissolution or other winding-up of any of the non-guarantor subsidiaries, creditors of those subsidiaries would be paid before any amounts would be distributed to us or to the guarantor as equity, and thus be available to satisfy our obligations under the notes and other claims against us or the guarantor.

***Risks Related to the Oil and Gas Industry and Our Business***

**Oil and natural gas prices are very volatile. An extended period of low oil and natural gas prices may adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flows.**

The oil and gas markets are very volatile, and we cannot predict future oil and natural gas prices. The price we receive for our oil, NGL and natural gas production heavily influences our revenue, profitability, access to capital and future rate of growth. The prices we receive for our production depend on numerous factors beyond our control. These factors include, but are not limited to, the following:

changes in regional, domestic and global supply and demand for oil and natural gas;

**Table of Contents**

the actions of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries;

the price and quantity of imports of foreign oil and natural gas;

political and economic conditions, including embargoes, in oil-producing countries or affecting other oil-producing activity, such as recent conflicts in the Middle East;

the level of global oil and natural gas exploration and production activity;

the effects of global credit, financial and economic issues;

the level of global oil and natural gas inventories;

developments of United States energy infrastructure, such as the approval to proceed with the Keystone XL pipeline from Hardisty, Alberta to Cushing, Oklahoma and the development of liquefied natural gas exporting facilities and the perceived timing thereof;

weather conditions;

technological advances affecting energy consumption;

domestic and foreign governmental regulations;

proximity and capacity of oil and natural gas pipelines and other transportation facilities;

the price and availability of competitors' supplies of oil and natural gas in captive market areas;

the price and availability of alternative fuels; and

acts of force majeure.

Moreover, government regulations, such as regulation of oil and natural gas gathering and transportation, can adversely affect commodity prices in the long term.

Lower oil, NGL and natural gas prices may not only decrease our revenues on a per unit basis but also may ultimately reduce the amount of oil and natural gas that we can produce economically and therefore potentially lower our reserve

quantities. A substantial or extended decline in oil, NGL or natural gas prices may result in impairments of our proved oil and gas properties and may materially and adversely affect our future business, financial condition, results of operations, liquidity or ability to finance planned capital expenditures. To the extent commodity prices received from production are insufficient to fund planned capital expenditures, we will be required to reduce spending or borrow any such shortfall. Lower oil, NGL and natural gas prices may also reduce the amount of our borrowing base under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility, which is determined at the discretion of the lenders based on the collateral value of our proved reserves that have been mortgaged to the lenders, and is subject to regular redeterminations on May 1 and November 1 of each year, as well as special redeterminations described in the credit agreement.

**Drilling for and producing oil and natural gas are high risk activities with many uncertainties that could adversely affect our business, financial condition or results of operations.**

Our future success will depend on the success of our development, exploitation, production and exploration activities. Our oil and natural gas exploration and production activities are subject to numerous risks beyond our control, including the risk that drilling will not result in commercially viable oil or natural gas production. Our decisions to purchase, explore, develop or otherwise exploit prospects or properties will depend in part on the evaluation of data obtained through geophysical and geological analyses, production data and engineering studies, the results of which are often inconclusive or subject to varying interpretations. Please read Reserve estimates depend on many assumptions that may turn out to be inaccurate... later in these Risk Factors for a discussion of the uncertainty involved in these processes. Our cost of drilling, completing and operating wells is often uncertain before drilling commences. Overruns in budgeted expenditures are common risks that can make a particular project uneconomical. Further, many factors may curtail, delay or cancel drilling, including the following:

delays imposed by or resulting from compliance with regulatory requirements;

pressure or irregularities in geological formations;

**Table of Contents**

shortages of or delays in obtaining qualified personnel or equipment, including drilling rigs, completion services and CO<sub>2</sub>;

equipment failures or accidents;

adverse weather conditions, such as freezing temperatures, hurricanes and storms;

reductions in oil, NGL and natural gas prices;

pipeline takeaway and refining and processing capacity; and

title problems.

**Federal, state and local legislative and regulatory initiatives relating to hydraulic fracturing could result in increased costs and additional operating restrictions or delays.**

Hydraulic fracturing is an important and common practice that is used to stimulate production of hydrocarbons from tight formations. The process involves the injection of water, sand and chemicals under pressure into formations to fracture the surrounding rock and stimulate production. Hydraulic fracturing has been utilized to complete wells in our most active areas located in the states of Colorado, Michigan, Montana, North Dakota and Texas, and we expect it will also be used in the future. Should our exploration and production activities expand to other states, it is likely that we will utilize hydraulic fracturing to complete or recomplete wells in those areas. The process is typically regulated by state oil and gas commissions. However, the EPA has asserted federal regulatory authority over hydraulic fracturing involving diesel under the Safe Drinking Water Act's Underground Injection Control Program and published draft permitting guidance in May 2012 regarding the process for obtaining a permit for hydraulic fracturing involving diesel.

At the same time, the EPA has commenced a study of the potential environmental impacts of hydraulic fracturing activities on drinking water resources. The EPA published a progress report of the study in December 2012 and expects to release a draft final report for public comment and peer review by 2014. Moreover, the EPA announced in October 2011 that it is also launching a study regarding wastewater resulting from hydraulic fracturing activities and currently plans to propose standards by 2014 that such wastewater must meet before being transported to a treatment plant. Other federal agencies are also examining hydraulic fracturing, including the U.S. Department of Energy, the U.S. Government Accountability Office and the White House Council for Environmental Quality. The U.S. Department of the Interior released a draft proposed rule in May 2012 governing hydraulic fracturing in federal and Indian oil and natural gas leases to require disclosure of information regarding the chemicals used in hydraulic fracturing, advance approval for well-stimulation activities, mechanical integrity testing of casing, and monitoring of well-stimulation operations, but on January 18, 2013 the agency announced that the Federal Bureau of Land Management will issue a revised draft proposed rule in 2013. In addition, legislation has been introduced in Congress from time to time to provide for federal regulation of hydraulic fracturing and to require disclosure of the chemicals used in the fracturing process. Also, some states have adopted, and other states are considering adopting, regulations that could restrict or impose additional requirements relating to hydraulic fracturing in certain circumstances. For example, on June 17, 2011, Texas enacted a law that requires the disclosure of information regarding the substances used in the hydraulic fracturing process to the Railroad Commission of Texas (the entity that regulates oil and natural

gas production) and the public. Such federal or state legislation could require the disclosure of chemical constituents used in the fracturing process to state or federal regulatory authorities who could then make such information publicly available. Disclosure of chemicals used in the fracturing process could make it easier for third parties opposing hydraulic fracturing to pursue legal proceedings against producers and service providers based on allegations that specific chemicals used in the fracturing process could adversely affect human health or the environment including groundwater. In addition, if hydraulic fracturing is regulated at the federal level, our fracturing activities could become subject to additional permit requirements or operational restrictions and also to associated permitting delays, litigation risk and potential increases in costs. Further, local governments may seek to adopt ordinances within their jurisdictions regulating the time, place and manner of drilling or hydraulic

S-21

## **Table of Contents**

fracturing. No assurance can be given as to whether or not similar measures might be considered or implemented in the jurisdictions in which our properties are located. If new laws, regulations or ordinances that significantly restrict or otherwise impact hydraulic fracturing are passed by Congress or adopted in the states or local municipalities where our properties are located, such legal requirements could make it more difficult or costly for us to perform hydraulic fracturing activities and thereby could affect the determination of whether a well is commercially viable. In addition, restrictions on hydraulic fracturing could reduce the amount of oil and natural gas that we are ultimately able to produce in commercially paying quantities.

### **Our use of enhanced recovery methods creates uncertainties that could adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.**

One of our business strategies is to commercially develop oil reservoirs using enhanced recovery technologies. For example, we inject water and CO<sub>2</sub> into formations on some of our properties to increase the production of oil and natural gas. The additional production and reserves attributable to the use of these enhanced recovery methods are inherently difficult to predict. If our enhanced recovery programs do not allow for the extraction of oil and gas in the manner or to the extent that we anticipate, our future results of operations and financial condition could be materially adversely affected. Additionally, our ability to utilize CO<sub>2</sub> as an enhanced recovery technique is subject to our ability to obtain sufficient quantities of CO<sub>2</sub>. Under our CO<sub>2</sub> contracts, if the supplier suffers an inability to deliver its contractually required quantities of CO<sub>2</sub> to us and other parties with whom it has CO<sub>2</sub> contracts, then the supplier may reduce the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> on a pro rata basis it provides to us and such other parties. If this occurs or if we are otherwise limited in the quantities of CO<sub>2</sub> available to us, we may not have sufficient CO<sub>2</sub> to produce oil and natural gas in the manner or to the extent that we anticipate, and our future oil and gas production volumes could be negatively impacted. These contracts are also structured as take-or-pay arrangements, which require us to continue to make payments even if we decide to terminate or reduce our use of CO<sub>2</sub> as part of our enhanced recovery techniques.

### **The development of the proved undeveloped reserves in the North Ward Estes field may take longer and may require higher levels of capital expenditures than we currently anticipate.**

As of December 31, 2012, proved undeveloped reserves comprised 43% of the North Ward Estes field's total estimated proved reserves. To fully develop these reserves, we expect to incur future development costs of \$750.0 million at the North Ward Estes field as of December 31, 2012. This field encompasses 28% of our total estimated future development costs related to proved undeveloped reserves. Development of these reserves may take longer and require higher levels of capital expenditures than we currently anticipate. In addition, the development of these reserves will require the use of enhanced recovery techniques, including water flood and CO<sub>2</sub> injection installations, the success of which is less predictable than traditional development techniques.

### **Prospects that we decide to drill may not yield oil or gas in commercially viable quantities.**

We describe some of our current prospects and our plans to explore those prospects in our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the quarters ended March 31, 2013 and June 30, 2013 and our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, which are incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement. A prospect is a property on which we have identified what our geoscientists believe, based on available seismic and geological information, to be indications of oil or gas. Our prospects are in various stages of evaluation, ranging from a prospect that is ready to drill to a prospect that will require substantial additional seismic data processing and interpretation. There is no way to predict in advance of drilling and testing whether any particular prospect will yield oil or gas in sufficient quantities to recover drilling or completion costs or to be economically viable. The use of seismic data and other technologies and the study of producing fields in the same area will not enable us to know conclusively prior to drilling whether oil or gas will be present or, if present, whether oil or gas will be present in commercial quantities. In

addition, because of the wide variance that results from different equipment used to test the wells, initial flow rates may not be indicative of sufficient oil or gas quantities in a particular field. The analogies we draw from available data from other wells, from more fully explored prospects,

S-22

## **Table of Contents**

or from producing fields may not be applicable to our drilling prospects. We may terminate our drilling program for a prospect if results do not merit further investment.

### **If oil, NGL and natural gas prices decrease, we may be required to take write-downs of the carrying values of our oil and gas properties.**

Accounting rules require that we periodically review the carrying value of our producing oil and gas properties for possible impairment. Based on specific market factors and circumstances at the time of prospective impairment reviews, which may include depressed oil, NGL and natural gas prices, and the continuing evaluation of development plans, production data, economics and other factors, we may be required to write down the carrying value of our oil and gas properties. For example, we recorded a \$3.2 million impairment write-down during 2011 for the partial impairment of producing properties, primarily natural gas, in California and Michigan. A write-down constitutes a non-cash charge to earnings. We may incur additional impairment charges in the future, which could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations in the period recognized.

### **Reserve estimates depend on many assumptions that may turn out to be inaccurate. Any material inaccuracies in these reserve estimates or underlying assumptions will materially affect the quantities and present value of our reserves.**

The process of estimating oil and natural gas reserves is complex. It requires interpretations of available technical data and many assumptions, including assumptions relating to economic factors. Any significant inaccuracies in these interpretations or assumptions could materially affect the estimated quantities and present value of reserves referred to in this prospectus supplement and in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, which is incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement.

In order to prepare our estimates, we must project production rates and timing of development expenditures. We must also analyze available geological, geophysical, production and engineering data. The extent, quality and reliability of this data can vary. The process also requires economic assumptions about matters such as the following:

historical production from the area compared with production rates from other producing areas;

the assumed effect of governmental regulation; and

assumptions about future prices of oil, NGLs and natural gas including differentials, production and development costs, gathering and transportation costs, severance and excise taxes, capital expenditures and availability of funds.

Therefore, estimates of oil and natural gas reserves are inherently imprecise. Actual future production; oil, NGL and natural gas prices; revenues; taxes; exploration and development expenditures; operating expenses; and quantities of recoverable oil and natural gas reserves, most likely will vary from our estimates. Any significant variance could materially affect the estimated quantities and present value of reserves referred to in this prospectus supplement. In addition, we may adjust estimates of proved reserves to reflect production history, results of exploration and development, prevailing oil and natural gas prices and other factors, many of which are beyond our control.



You should not assume that the present value of future net revenues from our proved reserves, as referred to in this prospectus supplement, is the current market value of our estimated proved oil and natural gas reserves. In accordance with SEC requirements, we base the estimated discounted future net cash flows from our proved reserves on 12-month average prices and current costs as of the date of the estimate. Actual future prices and costs may differ materially from those used in the estimate. If natural gas prices decline by \$0.10 per Mcf, then the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows of our estimated proved reserves as of December 31, 2012 would have decreased from \$5,407.0 million to \$5,398.9 million. If oil prices decline by \$1.00 per Bbl, then the standardized measure of discounted future net cash flows of our estimated proved reserves as of December 31, 2012 would have decreased from \$5,407.0 million to \$5,312.0 million.

S-23

**Table of Contents**

**Risks associated with the production, gathering, transportation and sale of oil, NGLs and natural gas could adversely affect net income and cash flows.**

Our net income and cash flows will depend upon, among other things, oil, NGL and natural gas production and the prices and costs incurred to exploit oil and natural gas reserves. Drilling, production or transportation accidents that temporarily or permanently halt the production and sale of oil, NGLs and natural gas will decrease revenues and increase expenditures. For example, accidents may occur that result in personal injuries, property damage, damage to productive formations or equipment and environmental damages. Any costs incurred in connection with any such accidents that are not insured against will have the effect of reducing net income. Also, we do not have insurance policies in effect that are intended to provide coverage for losses solely related to hydraulic fracturing operations. Please read Federal and state legislative and regulatory initiatives relating to hydraulic fracturing... above in these Risk Factors for a discussion of the uncertainty involved in the practice of hydraulic fracturing. In addition, curtailments or damage to pipelines used to transport oil, NGLs and natural gas production to markets for sale could decrease revenues or increase transportation expenses. Any such curtailment or damage to the gathering systems could also require finding alternative means to transport the oil, NGLs and natural gas production, which alternative means could result in additional costs that will have the effect of increasing transportation expenses.

Also, drilling, production and transportation of hydrocarbons bear an inherent risk of loss of containment. Potential consequences include loss of reserves, loss of production, loss of economic value associated with the affected wellbore, contamination of soil, ground water, and surface water, as well as potential fines, penalties or damages associated with any of the foregoing consequences.

**Our exploration and development operations require substantial capital, and we may be unable to obtain needed capital or financing on satisfactory terms, which could lead to a loss of properties and a decline in our oil and natural gas reserves.**

The oil and gas industry is capital intensive. We make and expect to continue to make substantial capital expenditures in our business and operations for the exploration, development, production and acquisition of oil and natural gas reserves. To date, we have financed capital expenditures through a combination of equity and debt issuances, bank borrowings and internally generated cash flows. We intend to finance future capital expenditures with cash flow from operations, existing financing arrangements and certain oil and gas divestitures. Our cash flow from operations and access to capital is subject to a number of variables, including:

our proved reserves;

the level of oil and natural gas we are able to produce from existing wells;

the prices at which oil and natural gas are sold;

the costs of producing oil and natural gas; and

our ability to acquire, locate and produce new reserves.

If our revenues or the borrowing base under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility decreases as a result of lower oil and natural gas prices, operating difficulties, declines in reserves, or for any other reason, then we may have limited ability to obtain the capital necessary to sustain our operations at current levels.

We may, from time to time, need to seek additional financing. There can be no assurance as to the availability or terms of any additional financing. If additional capital is needed, we may not be able to obtain debt or equity financing on terms favorable to us, or at all. If cash generated by operations or available under our revolving credit facility is not sufficient to meet our capital requirements, the failure to obtain additional financing could result in a curtailment of our operations relating to the exploration and development of our prospects, which in turn could lead to a possible loss of properties and a decline in our oil and natural gas reserves.

## Table of Contents

### **Our acquisition activities may not be successful.**

As part of our growth strategy, we have made and may continue to make acquisitions of businesses and properties. For example, on August 26, 2013, we executed a purchase and sale agreement to acquire certain producing oil and gas wells and development acreage in the Williston Basin in Williams and McKenzie Counties of North Dakota and Roosevelt and Richland Counties of Montana for \$260.0 million, which is expected to close by September 30, 2013. However, suitable acquisition candidates may not continue to be available on terms and conditions we find acceptable, and acquisitions pose substantial risks to our business, financial condition and results of operations. In pursuing acquisitions, we compete with other companies, many of which have greater financial and other resources to acquire attractive companies and properties. The following are some of the risks associated with acquisitions, including any completed or future acquisitions, such as the acquisition of the Williston Basin assets:

some of the acquired businesses or properties may not produce revenues, reserves, earnings or cash flow at anticipated levels;

we may assume liabilities that were not disclosed to us or that exceed our estimates;

we may be unable to integrate acquired businesses successfully and realize anticipated economic, operational and other benefits in a timely manner, which could result in substantial costs and delays or other operational, technical or financial problems;

acquisitions could disrupt our ongoing business, distract management, divert resources and make it difficult to maintain our current business standards, controls and procedures; and

we may issue additional equity or debt securities related to future acquisitions.

### **Substantial acquisitions or other transactions could require significant external capital and could change our risk and property profile.**

In order to finance acquisitions of additional producing or undeveloped properties, we may need to alter or increase our capitalization substantially through the issuance of debt or equity securities, the sale of production payments or other means. These changes in capitalization may significantly affect our risk profile. Additionally, significant acquisitions or other transactions can change the character of our operations and business. The character of the new properties may be substantially different in operating or geological characteristics or geographic location than our existing properties. Furthermore, we may not be able to obtain external funding for additional future acquisitions or other transactions or to obtain external funding on terms acceptable to us.

### **The unavailability or high cost of additional drilling rigs, equipment, supplies, personnel and oil field services could adversely affect our ability to execute our exploration and development plans on a timely basis or within our budget.**

The demand for qualified and experienced field personnel to conduct field operations, geologists, geophysicists, engineers and other professionals in the oil and natural gas industry can fluctuate significantly, often in correlation

with oil and natural gas prices, causing periodic shortages. Historically, there have been shortages of drilling rigs and other oilfield equipment as demand for rigs and equipment has increased along with the number of wells being drilled. These factors also cause significant increases in costs for equipment, services and personnel. Higher oil and natural gas prices generally stimulate demand and result in increased prices for drilling rigs, crews and associated supplies, equipment and services. Additionally, our operations in some instances require supply materials, such as CO<sub>2</sub>, for production, which could become subject to shortage and increasing costs. Shortages of field personnel, drilling rigs, equipment, supplies or personnel or price increases could delay or adversely affect our exploration and development operations, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flows, or restrict operations.

S-25

---

**Table of Contents**

**Our identified drilling locations are scheduled out over several years, making them susceptible to uncertainties that could materially alter the occurrence or timing of their drilling.**

We have specifically identified and scheduled drilling locations as an estimation of our future multi-year drilling activities on our existing acreage. As of December 31, 2012, we had identified a drilling inventory of over 2,400 gross drilling locations. These scheduled drilling locations represent a significant part of our growth strategy. Our ability to drill and develop these locations depends on a number of uncertainties, including oil and natural gas prices, the availability of capital, costs of oil field goods and services, drilling results, ability to extend drilling acreage leases beyond expiration, regulatory approvals and other factors. Because of these uncertainties, we do not know if the numerous potential drilling locations we have identified will ever be drilled or if we will be able to produce oil or gas from these or any other potential drilling locations. As such, our actual drilling activities may materially differ from those presently identified, which could adversely affect our business.

**We have been an early entrant into new or emerging plays. As a result, our drilling results in these areas are uncertain, and the value of our undeveloped acreage may decline, and we may incur impairment charges if drilling results are unsuccessful.**

While our costs to acquire undeveloped acreage in new or emerging plays have generally been less than those of later entrants into a developing play, our drilling results in these areas are more uncertain than drilling results in areas that are developed and producing. Since new or emerging plays have limited or no production history, we are unable to use past drilling results in those areas to help predict our future drilling results. Therefore, our cost of drilling, completing and operating wells in these areas may be higher than initially expected, and the value of our undeveloped acreage will decline if drilling results are unsuccessful. Furthermore, if drilling results are unsuccessful, we may be required to write down the carrying value of our undeveloped acreage in new or emerging plays. For example, during the fourth quarter of 2010, we recorded a \$5.8 million non-cash charge for the impairment of unproved properties in the central Utah Hingeline play. We may also incur such impairment charges in the future, which could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations in the period taken. Additionally, our rights to develop a portion of our undeveloped acreage may expire if not successfully developed or renewed. See Acreage in Item 2 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, which is incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement, for more information relating to the expiration of our rights to develop undeveloped acreage.

**Properties that we acquire may not produce as projected, and we may be unable to identify liabilities associated with the properties or obtain indemnities from sellers for liabilities they may have created.**

Our business strategy includes a continuing acquisition program. From 2004 through June 30, 2013, we completed 16 separate significant acquisitions of producing properties with a combined purchase price of \$1,900.3 million for estimated proved reserves as of the effective dates of the acquisitions of 230.9 MMBOE. Additionally, on August 26, 2013, we executed a purchase and sale agreement to acquire for \$260.0 million the Williston Basin assets, which had estimated proved reserves of 17.1 MMBOE as of the August 1, 2013 effective date of the acquisition. The successful acquisition of producing properties requires assessments of many factors, which are inherently inexact and may be inaccurate, including the following:

the amount of recoverable reserves;

future oil and natural gas prices;

estimates of operating costs;

estimates of future development costs;

timing of future development costs;

estimates of the costs and timing of plugging and abandonment; and

the assumption of unknown potential environmental and other liabilities, losses or costs, including, for example, historical spills or releases for which we are not indemnified or for which our indemnity is inadequate.

S-26

## **Table of Contents**

Our assessment will not reveal all existing or potential problems, nor will it permit us to become familiar enough with the properties to assess fully their capabilities and deficiencies. In the course of our due diligence, we may not inspect every well, platform, facility or pipeline. Inspections may not reveal structural and environmental problems, such as pipeline corrosion or groundwater contamination, when they are made. We may not be able to obtain contractual indemnities from the seller for liabilities that it created. We may be required to assume the risk of the physical condition of the properties in addition to the risk that the properties may not perform in accordance with our expectations.

### **Our use of oil and natural gas price hedging contracts involves credit risk and may limit higher revenues in the future in connection with commodity price increases and may result in significant fluctuations in our net income.**

We enter into hedging transactions of our oil and natural gas production revenues to reduce our exposure to fluctuations in the price of oil and natural gas. Our hedging transactions to date have consisted of financially settled crude oil and natural gas forward sales contracts, primarily costless collars, placed with major financial institutions. As of August 27, 2013, we had contracts, which include our 10% share of the Whiting USA Trust II hedges, covering the sale of between 1,044,340 and 1,334,450 barrels of oil per month for the remainder of 2013. All of our oil hedges will expire by December 2014. See **Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosure about Market Risk** in Item 3 of our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2013, which are incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement, for pricing and a more detailed discussion of our hedging transactions.

We may in the future enter into these and other types of hedging arrangements to reduce our exposure to fluctuations in the market prices of oil and natural gas, or alternatively, we may decide to unwind or restructure the hedging arrangements we previously entered into. Hedging transactions expose us to risk of financial loss in some circumstances, including if production is less than expected, the other party to the contract defaults on its obligations or there is a change in the expected differential between the underlying price in the hedging agreement and actual prices received. Hedging transactions may limit the benefit we may otherwise receive from increases in the price for oil and natural gas. Furthermore, if we do not engage in hedging transactions or unwind hedging transactions we previously entered into, then we may be more adversely affected by declines in oil and natural gas prices than our competitors who engage in hedging transactions. Additionally, hedging transactions may expose us to cash margin requirements.

We recognize all gains and losses from changes in commodity derivative fair values immediately in earnings rather than deferring any such amounts in accumulated other comprehensive income. Consequently, we may experience significant net losses, on a non-cash basis, due to changes in the value of our hedges as a result of commodity price volatility.

### **Seasonal weather conditions and lease stipulations adversely affect our ability to conduct drilling activities in some of the areas where we operate.**

Oil and gas operations in the Rocky Mountains are adversely affected by seasonal weather conditions and lease stipulations designed to protect various wildlife. In certain areas, drilling and other oil and gas activities can only be conducted during the spring and summer months. This limits our ability to operate in those areas and can intensify competition during those months for drilling rigs, oil field equipment, services, supplies and qualified personnel, which may lead to periodic shortages. Resulting shortages or high costs could delay our operations and materially increase our operating and capital costs.





**Table of Contents**

**An increase in the differential or decrease in the premium between the NYMEX or other benchmark prices of oil and natural gas and the wellhead price we receive could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations, financial condition and cash flows.**

The prices that we receive for our oil and natural gas production generally trade at a discount, but sometimes at a premium, to the relevant benchmark prices such as NYMEX. A negative difference between the benchmark price and the price received is called a differential and a positive difference is called a premium. The differential and premium may vary significantly due to market conditions, the quality and location of production and other risk factors. We cannot accurately predict oil and natural gas differentials and premiums. Increases in the differential and decreases in the premium between the benchmark price for oil and natural gas and the wellhead price we receive could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations, financial condition and cash flows.

**We may incur substantial losses and be subject to substantial liability claims as a result of our oil and gas operations.**

We are not insured against all risks. Losses and liabilities arising from uninsured and underinsured events could materially and adversely affect our business, financial condition or results of operations. Our oil and natural gas exploration and production activities are subject to all of the operating risks associated with drilling for and producing oil and natural gas, including the possibility of:

environmental hazards, such as uncontrollable flows of oil, gas, brine, well fluids, toxic gas or other pollution into the environment, including groundwater and shoreline contamination;

abnormally pressured formations;

mechanical difficulties, such as stuck oil field drilling and service tools and casing collapse;

fires and explosions;

personal injuries and death; and

natural disasters.

Any of these risks could adversely affect our ability to conduct operations or result in substantial losses to our company. We may elect not to obtain insurance if we believe that the cost of available insurance is excessive relative to the risks presented. In addition, pollution and environmental risks generally are not fully insurable. If a significant accident or other event occurs and is not fully covered by insurance, then it could adversely affect us.

**We have limited control over activities on properties we do not operate, which could reduce our production and revenues and increase capital expenditures.**

If we do not operate the properties in which we own an interest, we do not have control over normal operating procedures, expenditures or future development of our properties. The failure of an operator of our wells to adequately perform operations or an operator's breach of the applicable agreements could reduce our production and revenues. The success and timing of our drilling and development activities on properties operated by others therefore depends upon a number of factors outside of our control, including the operator's decisions with respect to the timing and amount of capital expenditures, the period of time over which the operator seeks to generate a return on capital expenditures, inclusion of other participants in drilling wells, and the use of technology, as well as the operator's expertise and financial resources and the operator's relative interest in the field. Operators may also opt to decrease operational activities following a significant decline in oil or natural gas prices. Because we do not have a majority interest in most wells we do not operate, we may not be in a position to remove the operator in the event of poor performance. Accordingly, while we use commercially reasonable efforts to cause the operator to act as a reasonably prudent operator, we are limited in our ability to do so.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Our use of 3-D seismic data is subject to interpretation and may not accurately identify the presence of oil and gas, which could adversely affect the results of our drilling operations.**

Even when properly used and interpreted, 3-D seismic data and visualization techniques are only tools used to assist geoscientists in identifying subsurface structures and hydrocarbon indicators and do not enable the interpreter to know whether hydrocarbons are, in fact, present in those structures. In addition, the use of 3-D seismic and other advanced technologies requires greater predrilling expenditures than traditional drilling strategies, and we could incur losses as a result of such expenditures. Thus, some of our drilling activities may not be successful or economical, and our overall drilling success rate or our drilling success rate for activities in a particular area could decline. We often gather 3-D seismic data over large areas. Our interpretation of seismic data delineates for us those portions of an area that we believe are desirable for drilling. Therefore, we may choose not to acquire option or lease rights prior to acquiring seismic data, and in many cases, we may identify hydrocarbon indicators before seeking option or lease rights in the location. If we are not able to lease those locations on acceptable terms, it would result in our having made substantial expenditures to acquire and analyze 3-D seismic data without having an opportunity to attempt to benefit from those expenditures.

### **Market conditions or operational impediments may hinder our access to oil and gas markets or delay our production.**

In connection with our continued development of oil and gas properties, we may be disproportionately exposed to the impact of delays or interruptions of production from wells in these properties, caused by transportation capacity constraints, curtailment of production or the interruption of transporting oil and gas volumes produced. In addition, market conditions or a lack of satisfactory oil and gas transportation arrangements may hinder our access to oil and gas markets or delay our production. The availability of a ready market for our oil, NGL and natural gas production depends on a number of factors, including the demand for and supply of oil, NGLs and natural gas and the proximity of reserves to pipelines and terminal facilities. Our ability to market our production depends substantially on the availability and capacity of gathering systems, pipelines and processing facilities owned and operated by third-parties. Additionally, entering into arrangements for these services exposes us to the risk that third parties will default on their obligations under such arrangements. Our failure to obtain such services on acceptable terms or the default by a third party on their obligation to provide such services could materially harm our business. We may be required to shut in wells for a lack of a market or because access to gas pipelines, gathering systems or processing facilities may be limited or unavailable. If that were to occur, then we would be unable to realize revenue from those wells until production arrangements were made to deliver the production to market.

### **We are subject to complex laws that can affect the cost, manner or feasibility of doing business.**

Exploration, development, production and sale of oil and natural gas are subject to extensive federal, state, local and international regulation. We may be required to make large expenditures to comply with governmental regulations. Matters subject to regulation include:

discharge permits for drilling operations;

drilling bonds;

reports concerning operations;

the spacing of wells;

unitization and pooling of properties; and

taxation.

Under these laws, we could be liable for personal injuries, property damage and other damages. Failure to comply with these laws also may result in the suspension or termination of our operations and subject us to

S-29

---

**Table of Contents**

administrative, civil and criminal penalties. Moreover, these laws could change in ways that could substantially increase our costs. Any such liabilities, penalties, suspensions, terminations or regulatory changes could materially and adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations.

**Our operations may incur substantial costs and liabilities to comply with environmental laws and regulations.**

Our oil and gas operations are subject to stringent federal, state and local laws and regulations relating to the release or disposal of materials into the environment or otherwise relating to environmental protection. These laws and regulations may require the acquisition of a permit before drilling commences; restrict the types, quantities and concentration of materials that can be released into the environment in connection with drilling and production activities; limit or prohibit drilling activities on certain lands lying within wilderness, wetlands and other protected areas; and impose substantial liabilities for pollution resulting from our operations. Failure to comply with these laws and regulations may result in the assessment of administrative, civil and criminal penalties, incurrence of investigatory or remedial obligations, or the imposition of injunctive relief. Under these environmental laws and regulations, we could be held strictly liable for the removal or remediation of previously released materials or property contamination regardless of whether we were responsible for the release or if our operations were standard in the industry at the time they were performed. Private parties, including the surface owners of properties upon which we drill, may also have the right to pursue legal actions to enforce compliance as well as to seek damages for non-compliance with environmental laws and regulations or for personal injury or property damage. We may not be able to recover some or any of these costs from insurance. Moreover, federal law and some state laws allow the government to place a lien on real property for costs incurred by the government to address contamination on the property.

Changes in environmental laws and regulations occur frequently and may have a materially adverse impact on our business. For example, in August 2012, the EPA published final rules under the federal Clean Air Act that subject oil and natural gas production, processing, transmission and storage operations to regulation under the New Source Performance Standards and National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants. With regards to production activities, these final rules require, among other things, the reduction of volatile organic compound emissions from certain fractured and refractured gas wells for which well completion operations are conducted and, in particular, requiring some of these wells to use reduced emission completions, also known as green completions, after January 1, 2015. These regulations also establish specific new requirements regarding emissions from production-related wet seal and reciprocating compressors, pneumatic controllers and storage vessels. Any increased governmental regulation or suspension of oil and natural gas exploration or production activities that arises out of these incidents could result in higher operating costs, which could, in turn, adversely affect our operating results. Also, for instance, any changes in laws or regulations that result in more stringent or costly material handling, storage, transport, disposal or cleanup requirements could require us to make significant expenditures to maintain compliance and may otherwise have a material adverse effect on our results of operations, competitive position or financial condition as well as those of the oil and gas industry in general.

**Climate change legislation or regulations restricting emissions of greenhouse gasses could result in increased operating costs and reduced demand for oil and gas that we produce.**

On December 15, 2009, the EPA published its findings that emissions of carbon dioxide, methane, and other greenhouse gases ( GHG ) present an endangerment to public health and the environment because emissions of such gases are, according to the EPA, contributing to the warming of the earth's atmosphere and other climate changes. Based on these findings, the EPA has begun adopting and implementing regulations that restrict emissions of GHG under existing provisions of the federal Clean Air Act (the CAA ), including one rule that limits emissions of GHG from motor vehicles beginning with the 2012 model year. The EPA has asserted that these final motor vehicle GHG emission standards trigger the CAA construction and operating permit requirements for stationary sources,

commencing when the motor vehicle standards took effect on January 2, 2011. On June 3, 2010, the EPA published its final rule to address the permitting of GHG emissions from stationary sources under the Prevention of Significant Deterioration ( PSD ) and Title V permitting programs.

S-30

## **Table of Contents**

This rule tailors these permitting programs to apply to certain stationary sources of GHG emissions in a multi-step process, with the largest sources first subject to permitting. Further, facilities required to obtain PSD permits for their GHG emissions are required to reduce those emissions consistent with guidance for determining best available control technology standards for GHG, which guidance was published by the EPA in November 2010. Also in November 2010, the EPA expanded its existing GHG reporting rule to include onshore oil and natural gas production, processing, transmission, storage, and distribution facilities. This rule requires reporting of GHG emissions from such facilities on an annual basis with reporting beginning in 2012 for emissions occurring in 2011.

In addition, both houses of Congress have actively considered legislation to reduce emissions of GHG, and many states have already taken legal measures to reduce emissions of GHG, primarily through the development of GHG inventories, greenhouse gas permitting and/or regional GHG cap and trade programs. Most of these cap and trade programs work by requiring either major sources of emissions or major producers of fuels to acquire and surrender emission allowances, with the number of allowances available for purchase reduced each year until the overall GHG emission reduction goal is achieved. In the absence of new legislation, the EPA is issuing new regulations that limit emissions of GHG associated with our operations which will require us to incur costs to inventory and reduce emissions of GHG associated with our operations and which could adversely affect demand for the oil, NGLs and natural gas that we produce. Finally, it should be noted that some scientists have concluded that increasing concentrations of GHG in the atmosphere may produce climate changes that have significant physical effects, such as increased frequency and severity of storms, droughts, floods and other climatic events; if any such effects were to occur, they could have an adverse effect on our assets and operations.

### **Unless we replace our oil and natural gas reserves, our reserves and production will decline, which would adversely affect our cash flows and results of operations.**

Unless we conduct successful development, exploitation and exploration activities or acquire properties containing proved reserves, our proved reserves will decline as those reserves are produced. Producing oil and natural gas reservoirs generally are characterized by declining production rates that vary depending upon reservoir characteristics and other factors. Our future oil and natural gas reserves and production, and therefore our cash flow and income, are highly dependent on our success in efficiently developing and exploiting our current reserves and economically finding or acquiring additional recoverable reserves. We may not be able to develop, exploit, find or acquire additional reserves to replace our current and future production.

### **The loss of senior management or technical personnel could adversely affect us.**

To a large extent, we depend on the services of our senior management and technical personnel. The loss of the services of our senior management or technical personnel, including James J. Volker, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer; James T. Brown, President and Chief Operating Officer; Mark R. Williams, Senior Vice President, Exploration and Development; Steven A. Kranker, Vice President, Reservoir Engineering/Acquisitions; Rick A. Ross, Vice President, Operations; David M. Seery, Vice President, Land; Michael J. Stevens, Vice President and Chief Financial Officer; or Peter W. Hagist, Vice President, Permian Operations, could have a material adverse effect on our operations. We do not maintain, nor do we plan to obtain, any insurance against the loss of any of these individuals.

### **Competition in the oil and gas industry is intense, which may adversely affect our ability to compete.**

We operate in a highly competitive environment for acquiring properties, marketing oil and gas and securing trained personnel. Many of our competitors possess and employ financial, technical and personnel resources substantially greater than ours, which can be particularly important in the areas in which we operate. Those companies may be able to pay more for productive oil and gas properties and exploratory prospects and to evaluate, bid for and purchase a



greater number of properties and prospects than our financial or personnel resources permit. Our ability to acquire additional prospects and to find and develop reserves in the future will

S-31

**Table of Contents**

depend on our ability to evaluate and select suitable properties and to consummate transactions in a highly competitive environment. Also, there is substantial competition for available capital for investment in the oil and gas industry. We may not be able to compete successfully in the future in acquiring prospective reserves, developing reserves, marketing hydrocarbons, attracting and retaining quality personnel and raising additional capital.

**Certain federal income tax deductions currently available with respect to oil and gas exploration and development may be eliminated or deferred as a result of future legislation.**

In April 2013, President Obama's Administration released its proposed federal budget for fiscal year 2014 that would, if enacted into law, make significant changes to United States tax laws, including the elimination of certain key U.S. federal income tax preferences currently available to oil and gas exploration and production companies. Such changes include, but are not limited to:

the repeal of the percentage depletion allowance for oil and gas properties;

the elimination of current deductions for intangible drilling and development costs;

the elimination of the deduction for U.S. oil and gas production activities; and

an extension of the amortization period for certain geological and geophysical expenditures.

It is unclear, however, whether any such changes will be enacted or how soon such changes could be effective. The passage of any legislation containing these or similar changes in U.S. federal income tax law could eliminate or defer certain tax deductions that are currently available with respect to oil and gas exploration and development, and any such changes could negatively affect our financial condition and results of operations.

**In connection with the passage of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, new regulations forthcoming in this area may result in increased costs and cash collateral requirements for the types of oil and gas derivative instruments we use to manage our risks related to oil and gas commodity price volatility.**

On July 21, 2010, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act was enacted into law. This financial reform legislation includes provisions that require over-the-counter derivative transactions to be executed through an exchange or centrally cleared. In addition, the legislation provides an exemption from mandatory clearing requirements based on regulations to be developed by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (the "CFTC") and the SEC for transactions by non-financial institutions to hedge or mitigate commercial risk. At the same time, the legislation includes provisions under which the CFTC may impose collateral requirements for transactions, including those that are used to hedge commercial risk. However, during drafting of the legislation, members of Congress adopted report language and issued a public letter stating that it was not their intention to impose margin and collateral requirements on counterparties that utilize transactions to hedge commercial risk. Final rules on major provisions in the legislation, like new margin requirements, will be established through rulemakings and will not take effect until 12 months after the date of enactment. Although we cannot predict the ultimate outcome of these rulemakings, new regulations in this area may result in increased costs and cash collateral requirements for the types of oil and gas derivative instruments we use to hedge and to otherwise manage our financial risks related to volatility in oil and gas

commodity prices.

S-32

**Table of Contents**

**USE OF PROCEEDS**

We estimate that the net proceeds from this offering will be approximately \$1,778.5 million after deducting the underwriting discount and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. We expect to use the net proceeds from this offering to repay all of the debt outstanding under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility, to fund our \$260.0 million acquisition of the Williston Basin assets, to retire our \$250.0 million of outstanding 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014 on or prior to their maturity on February 1, 2014 and for general corporate purposes including capital expenditures. Borrowings under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility bear interest at the rate of 2.2% as of September 6, 2013 and mature in April 2016. Amounts paid under the credit facility may be reborrowed, subject to the terms of the credit facility.

Affiliates of all of the underwriters are lenders under our credit facility, and accordingly, will receive a portion of the proceeds from this offering in the form of the repayment of borrowings under such facility. In addition, certain of the underwriters or their affiliates are holders of our outstanding 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014 and, accordingly, may receive a portion of the net proceeds of this offering in connection with the retirement of such notes. See Underwriting (Conflicts of Interest).

**Table of Contents****CAPITALIZATION**

The following table sets forth our capitalization as of June 30, 2013:

on an actual basis;

on a pro forma basis giving effect to the sale of the Postle properties, which closed on July 15, 2013; and

on a pro forma basis to give effect to the transaction referred to in the immediately preceding bullet point and as adjusted to give effect to this offering and the anticipated application of the estimated net proceeds of this offering as described in Use of Proceeds.

You should read this table in conjunction with our historical financial statements and related notes incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus.

|  | <b>June 30, 2013</b> |   |  |
|--|----------------------|---|--|
|  | <b>Actual</b>        | <b>Pro Forma for<br/>Postle Sale<br/>(In thousands)</b> | <b>Pro Forma for<br/>Postle Sale and as<br/>Adjusted</b> |
| Cash and cash equivalents                  | \$ 23,312            | \$ 23,312   | \$ 392,767   |
| Long-term debt                             |                      |   |  |
| Credit facility(1)                         | \$ 1,650,000         | \$ 899,044  | \$   |
| 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014(2) | 250,000              | 250,000   |  |
| 6.5% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2018    | 350,000              | 350,000   | 350,000  |
| Senior Notes offered hereby                |                      |   | 1,800,000  |
| <b>Total long-term debt</b>                | <b>2,250,000</b>     | <b>1,499,044</b>  | <b>2,150,000</b>   |
| Total Whiting shareholders equity          | 3,672,198            | 3,777,378   | 3,777,378  |
| <b>Total capitalization</b>                | <b>\$ 5,922,198</b>  | <b>\$ 5,276,422</b>                                     | <b>\$ 5,927,378</b>                                      |

(1) As of September 6, 2013, total borrowings under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility were \$1,100.0 million.

(2) The 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014 are due February 1, 2014 and are classified under current portion of long-term debt.



---

**Table of Contents**

**DESCRIPTION OF NOTES**

You can find the definitions of certain terms used in this description under the subheading **Certain Definitions**. In this description, the term **Company**, **us** or **we** refers only to Whiting Petroleum Corporation and not to any of its subsidiaries. The term **notes** refers collectively to the Company's **% Senior Notes due 2019** (the **2019 notes**) and **% Senior Notes due 2021** (the **2021 notes**) being offered hereby.

The Company will issue the 2019 notes and 2021 notes as separate series of debt securities under a senior indenture to be entered into at the closing of this offering among itself, the Guarantors and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N. A., as trustee, as supplemented by an indenture supplement for each series of notes to be entered into establishing the terms of the notes. We refer to the senior indenture, as so supplemented, as the **indenture**. The terms of the notes include those stated in the indenture and those made part of the indenture by reference to the Trust Indenture Act of 1939.

The following description and the description in the accompanying prospectus are summaries of the material provisions of the notes and the indenture. These descriptions do not restate the indenture in its entirety. We urge you to read the indenture because it, and not these descriptions, defines your rights as holders of the notes. We have filed a form of the senior indenture as an exhibit to the registration statement that includes the accompanying prospectus. Certain defined terms used in this description but not defined below under **Certain Definitions** have the meanings assigned to them in the indenture.

This **Description of Notes** replaces the description of the general provisions of the notes and the indenture in the accompanying prospectus to the extent that it is inconsistent with the accompanying prospectus. The 2019 notes and 2021 notes are each an issue of **Senior Debt Securities** as that term is used in the accompanying prospectus.

The registered Holder of a note will be treated as the owner of it for all purposes. Only registered Holders will have rights under the indenture.

**Brief Description of the Notes and the Subsidiary Guarantees**

*The Notes.* The notes:

will be general unsecured obligations of the Company;

will rank equally in right of payment with all senior indebtedness of the Company;

will rank senior in right of payment to our outstanding senior subordinated notes and any future subordinated indebtedness of the Company;

will effectively be subordinated to all secured indebtedness of the Company, including under the senior secured credit facility of our wholly owned subsidiary, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation (the **credit facility**), to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness; and

will be unconditionally guaranteed by the Guarantors on a senior basis.

*The Subsidiary Guarantees.* Initially, the notes are guaranteed by the Company's only Material Domestic Subsidiary, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation.

Each guarantee of the notes:

will be general unsecured obligations of the Guarantor;

will rank equally in right of payment with all senior indebtedness of the Guarantor;

will rank senior in right of payment to the Guarantor's guarantee of our outstanding senior subordinated notes and any subordinated indebtedness of the Guarantor; and

S-35



---

**Table of Contents**

will effectively be subordinated to all secured indebtedness of the Guarantor, including under the credit facility, to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness

As of June 30, 2013, on a pro forma basis giving effect to sale of the Postle properties, which occurred on July 15, 2013, and after giving effect to this offering, the application of the net proceeds thereof as set forth under Use of Proceeds, and after giving effect to the reduction in commitments under the credit facility upon consummation of this offering, the Company and the Guarantor would have had:

no secured debt (with availability to borrow under the credit facility of \$1,197.6 million, subject to the terms thereof);

total senior debt of approximately \$1,800.0 million, consisting of the notes; and

\$350.0 million of outstanding senior subordinated notes that are contractually subordinated to the notes and the Subsidiary Guarantee.

Initially, not all of our existing subsidiaries will guarantee the notes. Furthermore, under the circumstances described below under the subheading Certain Covenants Additional Subsidiary Guarantees, in the future one or more of our newly created or acquired subsidiaries may not guarantee the notes. In the event of a bankruptcy, liquidation or reorganization of any of these non-Guarantor subsidiaries, the non-Guarantor subsidiaries will pay the holders of their debt and their trade creditors before they will be able to distribute any of their assets to us. The non-Guarantor subsidiaries have no outstanding Indebtedness (other than intercompany Indebtedness, except that Whiting Programs, Inc. has guaranteed our obligations under our outstanding 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014). They generated less than 0.1% of our consolidated revenues in the fiscal year ended December 31, 2012 and held less than 0.5% of our consolidated assets as of June 30, 2013.

As of the Issue Date, all of our subsidiaries will be Restricted Subsidiaries. However, under the circumstances described below under the subheading Certain Covenants Designation of Restricted and Unrestricted Subsidiaries, we will be permitted to designate certain of our subsidiaries as Unrestricted Subsidiaries. Our Unrestricted Subsidiaries will not be subject to many of the restrictive covenants in the indenture. Our Unrestricted Subsidiaries will not guarantee the notes.

**Principal, Maturity and Interest**

The Company will issue the 2019 notes with an initial maximum aggregate principal amount of \$ and the 2021 notes also with an initial maximum aggregate principal amount of \$. The Company may issue additional notes of either series from time to time after this offering. Any offering of additional notes is subject to the covenant described below under the caption Certain Covenants Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock. The notes of each series and any additional notes of such series subsequently issued under the indenture will be treated as a single series for all purposes under the indenture, including, without limitation, waivers, amendments, redemptions and offers to purchase. The Company will issue notes in minimum denominations of \$2,000 and any integral multiple of \$1,000 in excess thereof.

The 2019 notes will mature on , 2019. The 2021 notes will mature on , 2021.

Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

Interest on the 2019 notes will accrue at the rate of % per annum and interest on the 2021 notes will accrue at the rate of % per annum. Interest on the notes will be payable semi-annually in arrears on each and , commencing on , 2014. The Company will make each interest payment to the Holders of record on the and immediately preceding each interest payment date.

Interest on the notes will accrue from the date of original issuance or, if interest has already been paid, from the date it was most recently paid. Interest will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year comprised of twelve 30-day months.

S-36

## **Table of Contents**

### **Methods of Receiving Payments on the Notes**

If a Holder has given wire transfer instructions to the trustee, the Company will pay all principal, interest and premium, if any, on that Holder's notes in accordance with those instructions. All other payments on notes will be made at the office or agency of the paying agent and registrar within the City and State of New York unless the Company elects to make interest payments by check mailed to the Holders at their address set forth in the register of Holders.

### **Paying Agent and Registrar for the Notes**

The trustee will initially act as paying agent and registrar. The Company may change the paying agent or registrar without prior notice to the Holders of the notes, and the Company or any of its Domestic Subsidiaries may act as paying agent.

### **Transfer and Exchange**

A Holder may transfer or exchange notes in accordance with the indenture. The Company or the trustee may require a Holder to furnish appropriate endorsements and transfer documents in connection with a transfer of notes. No service charge will be imposed for any registration of transfer or exchange of notes, but the Company may require Holders to pay all taxes due on transfer. The Company is not required to transfer or exchange any note selected for redemption. Also, the Company is not required to transfer or exchange any note for a period of 15 days before mailing a notice of redemption of the notes.

### **Subsidiary Guarantees**

Initially, our wholly-owned Subsidiary, Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation, will guarantee the notes. In the future, the notes will be guaranteed by each of the Company's newly created or acquired Material Domestic Subsidiaries and by any other Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that guarantees any other Indebtedness of the Company in excess of \$1.0 million. See **Certain Covenants Additional Subsidiary Guarantees**. These Subsidiary Guarantees will be joint and several obligations of the Guarantors. The obligations of each Guarantor under its Subsidiary Guarantee will be limited as necessary to prevent that Subsidiary Guarantee from constituting a fraudulent conveyance under applicable law. See **Risk Factors Risks Relating to the Notes**. Any subsidiary guarantees of the notes may be subordinated or avoided by a court.

A Guarantor may not sell or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its properties or assets to, or consolidate with or merge with or into (whether or not such Guarantor is the surviving Person), another Person, other than the Company or another Guarantor, unless:

- (1) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default exists; and
- (2) either:
  - (a) the Person acquiring the properties or assets in any such sale or other disposition or the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than the Guarantor) unconditionally

assumes all the obligations of that Guarantor, pursuant to a supplemental indenture substantially in the form specified in the indenture, under the notes, the indenture and its Subsidiary Guarantee on terms set forth therein; or

- (b) the Net Proceeds of such sale or other disposition are applied in accordance with the Asset Sale provisions of the indenture.

The Subsidiary Guarantee of a Guarantor will be released:

- (1) in connection with any sale or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of that Guarantor (including by way of merger or consolidation) to a Person that is not (either before or after giving effect to such transaction) a Subsidiary of the Company, if the sale or other disposition complies with the Asset Sale provisions of the indenture; or

S-37

---

**Table of Contents**

- (2) in connection with any sale or other disposition of all of the Capital Stock of that Guarantor to a Person that is not (either before or after giving effect to such transaction) a Subsidiary of the Company, if the sale or other disposition complies with the Asset Sale provisions of the indenture; or
  - (3) if such Guarantor ceases to be a Material Domestic Subsidiary and is not a guarantor of Indebtedness of the Company in excess of \$1.0 million; or
  - (4) if the Company designates any Restricted Subsidiary that is a Guarantor as an Unrestricted Subsidiary in accordance with the applicable provisions of the indenture; or
  - (5) upon Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance as described below under the caption Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance or upon satisfaction and discharge of the indenture as described below under the caption Satisfaction and Discharge.
- See Repurchase at the Option of Holders Asset Sales.

**Optional Redemption**

On or after \_\_\_\_\_, 2019 (three months prior to maturity of the 2019 notes), with respect to the 2019 notes, or \_\_\_\_\_, 2021 (three months prior to maturity of the 2021 notes), with respect to the 2021 notes, the Company may on any one or more occasions redeem all or part of the notes of such series upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior notice at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount thereof plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to the date of redemption (subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the redemption date).

Prior to the dates referred to above, the Company may on any one or more occasions redeem all or a part of the notes of either series upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior notice at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount thereof plus the Applicable Premium as of, and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to, the date of redemption (subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the redemption date).

*Applicable Premium* means, with respect to a note at any redemption date, the greater of (x) 1.0% of the principal amount of such note or (y) the excess of (A) the present value at such redemption date of (1) the principal amount of such note plus (2) all required interest payments due on such note through the final maturity date (without regard to accrued and unpaid interest), computed using a discount rate equal to the Treasury Rate plus 50 basis points, over (B) the principal amount of such note.

*Treasury Rate* means the yield to maturity at the time of computation of United States Treasury securities with a constant maturity (as compiled and published in the most recent Federal Reserve Statistical Release H.15 (519) that has become publicly available at least two business days prior to the redemption date (or, if such Statistical Release is no longer published, any publicly available source or similar market data)) most nearly equal to the period from the redemption date to the final maturity date of the notes being redeemed; provided, however, that if the period from the redemption date to such final maturity date is not equal to the constant maturity of a United States Treasury security for which a weekly average yield is given, the Treasury Rate shall be obtained by linear interpolation (calculated to the nearest one-twelfth of a year) from the weekly average yields of United States Treasury securities for which such yields are given, except that if the period from the redemption date to such final maturity is less than one year, the

weekly average yield on actually traded United States Treasury securities adjusted to a constant maturity of one year shall be used.

Except as provided above or under Repurchase at the Option of Holders Change of Control , the notes will not be redeemable at the Company s option prior to their final maturity.

The Company may acquire notes by means other than a redemption, whether by tender offer, open market purchases, negotiated transactions or otherwise, as long as such acquisition does not otherwise violate the terms of the indenture.

S-38

## **Table of Contents**

### **Selection and Notice**

If less than all of the notes of a series are to be redeemed at any time, the trustee will select notes for redemption as follows:

(1) if the notes of such series are listed on any national securities exchange, in compliance with the requirements of the principal national securities exchange on which the notes of such series are listed; or

(2) if the notes of such series are not listed on any national securities exchange, on a pro rata basis.

No notes of \$2,000 or less can be redeemed in part. Notices of redemption will be mailed by first class mail at least 30 but not more than 60 days before the redemption date to each Holder of notes to be redeemed at its registered address, except that redemption notices may be mailed more than 60 days prior to a redemption date if the notice is issued in connection with a defeasance of the notes or a satisfaction and discharge of the indenture. Notices of redemption may not be conditional.

If any note is to be redeemed in part only, the notice of redemption that relates to that note will state the portion of the principal amount of that note that is to be redeemed. A new note in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the original note will be issued in the name of the Holder of notes upon cancellation of the original note. Notes called for redemption become due on the date fixed for redemption. On and after the redemption date, interest ceases to accrue on notes or portions of them called for redemption.

### **Mandatory Redemption**

Except as set forth below under **Repurchase at the Option of Holders**, the Company is not required to make mandatory redemption or sinking fund payments with respect to the notes or to repurchase the notes at the option of the Holders.

### **Repurchase at the Option of Holders**

#### *Change of Control*

If a Change of Control occurs, each Holder of notes will have the right to require the Company to repurchase all or any part (equal to \$2,000 or any integral multiple of \$1,000 in excess thereof) of that Holder's notes pursuant to a Change of Control Offer on the terms set forth in the indenture. In the Change of Control Offer, the Company will offer a Change of Control Payment in cash equal to 101% of the aggregate principal amount of notes repurchased plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on the notes repurchased, to the date of settlement (the **Change of Control Settlement Date**), subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the Change of Control Settlement Date. Within 30 days following any Change of Control, the Company will mail a notice to each Holder and the trustee describing the transaction or transactions that constitute the Change of Control and offering to repurchase notes as of the Change of Control Settlement Date specified in the notice, which date will be no earlier than 30 days and no later than 60 days from the date such notice is mailed (or, in the case of a notice mailed in advance of a Change of Control, no earlier than 30 days and no later than 60 days from the date of such Change of Control), pursuant to the procedures required by the indenture and described in such notice.

The Company will comply with the requirements of Rule 14e-1 under the Exchange Act and any other securities laws and regulations thereunder to the extent those laws and regulations are applicable in connection with the repurchase of the notes as a result of a Change of Control. To the extent that the provisions of any securities laws or regulations conflict with the Change of Control provisions of the indenture, the Company will comply with the applicable securities laws and regulations and will not be deemed to have breached its obligations under the Change of Control provisions of the indenture by virtue of such compliance.

S-39



## Table of Contents

On the Change of Control Settlement Date, the Company will, to the extent lawful, accept for payment all notes or portions of notes properly tendered pursuant to the Change of Control Offer. Promptly thereafter on the Change of Control Settlement Date the Company will:

- (1) deposit with the paying agent an amount equal to the Change of Control Payment in respect of all notes or portions of notes properly tendered; and
- (2) deliver or cause to be delivered to the trustee the notes properly accepted together with an officers certificate stating the aggregate principal amount of notes or portions of notes being purchased by the Company.

On the Change of Control Settlement Date, the paying agent will mail to each Holder of notes properly tendered the Change of Control Payment for such notes (or, if all the notes are then in global form, make such payment through the facilities of DTC), and the trustee will authenticate and mail (or cause to be transferred by book entry) to each Holder a new note equal in principal amount to any unpurchased portion of the notes surrendered, if any; provided that each new note will be in a principal amount of \$2,000 or any integral multiple of \$1,000 in excess thereof. The Company will publicly announce the results of the Change of Control Offer on or as soon as practicable after the Change of Control Settlement Date.

The provisions described above that require the Company to make a Change of Control Offer following a Change of Control will be applicable whether or not any other provisions of the indenture are applicable. Except as described above with respect to a Change of Control, the indenture does not contain provisions that permit the Holders of the notes to require that the Company repurchase or redeem the notes in the event of a takeover, recapitalization or similar transaction.

The Company will not be required to make a Change of Control Offer upon a Change of Control (1) if a third party makes the Change of Control Offer in the manner, at the time and otherwise in compliance with the requirements set forth in the indenture applicable to a Change of Control Offer made by the Company and purchases all notes properly tendered and not withdrawn under the Change of Control Offer or (2) notice of redemption has been given pursuant to the indenture as described above under the caption Optional Redemption ), unless and until there is a default in payment of the applicable redemption price. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, a Change of Control Offer by the Company or a third party may be made in advance of a Change of Control, and conditioned upon the occurrence of a Change of Control, if a definitive agreement is in place for the Change of Control at the time the Change of Control Offer is made.

Notes purchased by the Company pursuant to a Change of Control Offer will have the status of notes issued but not outstanding or will be retired and cancelled, at the Company's option. Notes purchased by a third party pursuant to the preceding paragraph will have the status of notes issued and outstanding.

The definition of Change of Control includes a phrase relating to the direct or indirect sale, lease, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole. The indenture is governed by New York law and although there is a limited body of case law interpreting the phrase substantially all, there is no precise established definition under New York law of substantially all the assets of a corporation. Accordingly, the ability of a Holder of notes to require the Company to repurchase its notes as a result of a sale, lease, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of less than all of the assets of the Company and its Subsidiaries taken as a whole to another Person or group may be uncertain. In the event that Holders of notes of not less than 90% of the aggregate principal amount of the outstanding notes of a series accept a Change of Control Offer and the Company purchases all of the notes of such series held by such holders, the Company will have the right to, upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior notice, given not more than 30 days following the purchase

pursuant to the Change of Control Offer described above, to redeem all of the notes of such series that remain outstanding following such purchase at a purchase price equal to the Change of Control Payment plus, to the extent not included in the Change of

S-40

## **Table of Contents**

Control Payment, accrued and unpaid interest on the notes that remain outstanding, if any, to the Change of Control Settlement Date, subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the Change of Control Settlement Date.

The Credit Agreement limits the ability of the Company to purchase any notes, and also provides that certain change of control events with respect to the Company would constitute an event of default requiring, at the option of the lenders, repayment of the debt arising under the Credit Agreement. Any future credit agreements or other agreements relating to indebtedness to which the Company becomes a party may contain similar or additional restrictions and provisions. In the event a Change of Control occurs at a time when the Company is prohibited from purchasing notes, the Company could seek the consent of its senior lenders to the purchase of notes or could attempt to refinance the borrowings that contain such prohibition. If the Company does not obtain such a consent or repay such borrowings, the Company will remain prohibited from purchasing notes. In such case, the Company's failure to purchase tendered notes would constitute an Event of Default under the indenture which would, in turn, constitute an event of default under such debt.

### *Asset Sales*

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, consummate an Asset Sale unless:

- (1) the Company (or the Restricted Subsidiary, as the case may be) receives consideration at the time of the Asset Sale at least equal to the fair market value of the assets or Equity Interests issued or sold or otherwise disposed of;
- (2) the fair market value is determined by the Company's Board of Directors and evidenced by a resolution of the Board of Directors set forth in an officers' certificate delivered to the trustee; and
- (3) at least 75% of the consideration received in the Asset Sale by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary is in the form of cash or Cash Equivalents. For purposes of this clause (3) only, each of the following will be deemed to be Cash Equivalents:
  - (a) any liabilities, as shown on the Company's or such Restricted Subsidiary's most recent balance sheet, of the Company or any Subsidiary (other than contingent liabilities and liabilities that are by their terms subordinated to the notes or any Subsidiary Guarantee) that are assumed by the transferee of any such assets pursuant to a novation agreement that releases the Company or such Subsidiary from further liability;
  - (b) any securities, notes or other obligations received by the Company or any such Restricted Subsidiary from such transferee that are converted by the Company or such Subsidiary into cash within 180 days of the receipt thereof, to the extent of the cash received in that conversion; and
  - (c)

with respect to any Asset Sale of oil and natural gas properties where the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary retains an interest in such property, the aggregate costs and expenses of the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary related to the exploration, development, completion or production of such properties and activities related thereto which the transferee (or an Affiliate thereof) agrees to pay.

Within 360 days after the receipt of any Net Proceeds from an Asset Sale, the Company or any such Restricted Subsidiary may apply those Net Proceeds at its option to any combination of the following:

- (1) to prepay, repay, redeem or repurchase any Indebtedness of the Company or a Guarantor (other than intercompany Indebtedness, Capital Stock or Indebtedness that is subordinated to the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees) or any Indebtedness of a Restricted Subsidiary that is not a Guarantor (other than intercompany Indebtedness);
- (2) to acquire all or substantially all of the properties or assets of one or more other Persons primarily engaged in the Oil and Gas Business, and, for this purpose, a division or line of business of a Person shall be treated as a separate Person;

---

**Table of Contents**

- (3) to acquire a majority of the Voting Stock of one or more other Persons primarily engaged in the Oil and Gas Business;
- (4) to make one or more capital expenditures; or
- (5) to acquire other long-term assets that are used or useful in the Oil and Gas Business.

Pending the final application of any Net Proceeds, the Company or any such Restricted Subsidiary may temporarily reduce revolving credit borrowings or otherwise invest the Net Proceeds in any manner that is not prohibited by the indenture. Any Net Proceeds from Asset Sales that are not applied or invested as provided in the preceding paragraph will constitute Excess Proceeds.

On the 361st day after the Asset Sale (or, at the Company's option, any earlier date), if the aggregate amount of Excess Proceeds then exceeds \$50.0 million, the Company will make an Asset Sale Offer to all Holders of notes, and all holders of other Indebtedness that is pari passu with the notes containing provisions similar to those set forth in the indenture with respect to offers to purchase or redeem with the proceeds of sales of assets, to purchase the maximum principal amount of notes and such other pari passu Indebtedness that may be purchased out of the Excess Proceeds. The offer price in any Asset Sale Offer will be equal to 100% of the principal amount plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to the date of settlement, subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the date of settlement, and will be payable in cash. If any Excess Proceeds remain after consummation of an Asset Sale Offer, the Company may use those Excess Proceeds for any purpose not otherwise prohibited by the indenture. If the aggregate principal amount of notes and other pari passu Indebtedness tendered in such Asset Sale Offer exceeds the amount of Excess Proceeds, the trustee will select the notes and such other pari passu Indebtedness to be purchased on a pro rata basis (with such adjustments as may be deemed appropriate by the Company so that only notes in denominations of \$2,000 or any integral multiple of \$1,000 in excess thereof will be purchased). Upon completion of each Asset Sale Offer, the amount of Excess Proceeds will be reset at zero.

The Company will comply with the requirements of Rule 14e-1 under the Exchange Act and any other securities laws and regulations thereunder to the extent those laws and regulations are applicable in connection with each repurchase of notes pursuant to an Asset Sale Offer. To the extent that the provisions of any securities laws or regulations conflict with the Asset Sale provisions of the indenture, the Company will comply with the applicable securities laws and regulations and will not be deemed to have breached its obligations under the Asset Sale provisions of the indenture by virtue of such compliance.

**Certain Covenants**

*Restricted Payments*

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, directly or indirectly:

- (1) declare or pay any dividend or make any other payment or distribution on account of the Company's or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries' Equity Interests (including, without limitation, any payment in connection with any merger or consolidation to which the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries is a party) or to the direct or indirect holders of the Company's or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries' Equity Interests in their

capacity as such (other than dividends or distributions payable in Equity Interests (other than Disqualified Stock) of the Company or payable to the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company);

- (2) purchase, redeem or otherwise acquire or retire for value (including, without limitation, in connection with any merger or consolidation to which the Company is a party) any Equity Interests of the Company or any direct or indirect parent of the Company;
- (3) make any principal payment on or with respect to, or purchase, redeem, defease or otherwise acquire or retire for value any Indebtedness that is subordinated to the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees prior to

---

**Table of Contents**

any scheduled repayment or scheduled maturity, except a payment, purchase, redemption, defeasance or other acquisition of any such Indebtedness in anticipation of satisfying a sinking fund obligation, principal installment or the Stated Maturity thereof, in each case, due within one year of the date of such payment, purchase, redemption, defeasance or other acquisition; or

(4) make any Restricted Investment (all such payments and other actions set forth in these clauses (1) through (4) above being collectively referred to as Restricted Payments ), unless, at the time of and after giving effect to such Restricted Payment:

- (1) no Default or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing or would occur as a consequence of such Restricted Payment;
- (2) the Company would, at the time of such Restricted Payment and after giving pro forma effect thereto as if such Restricted Payment had been made at the beginning of the applicable four-quarter period, have been permitted to incur at least \$1.00 of additional Indebtedness pursuant to the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio test set forth in the first paragraph of the covenant described below under the caption Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock; and
- (3) such Restricted Payment, together with the aggregate amount of all other Restricted Payments made by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries after May 11, 2004 (excluding Restricted Payments permitted by clauses (2), (3), (4), (6), (7) and (8) of the next succeeding paragraph), is less than the sum, without duplication, of:
  - (a) 50% of the Consolidated Net Income of the Company for the period (taken as one accounting period) from April 1, 2004 to the end of the Company's most recently ended fiscal quarter for which internal financial statements are available at the time of such Restricted Payment (or, if such Consolidated Net Income for such period is a deficit, less 100% of such deficit), plus
  - (b) 100% of the aggregate net cash proceeds received by the Company (including the fair market value of any Additional Assets to the extent acquired in consideration of Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock)) since May 11, 2004 as a contribution to its common equity capital or from the issue or sale of Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock) or from the issue or sale of convertible or exchangeable Disqualified Stock or convertible or exchangeable debt securities of the Company that have been converted into or exchanged for such Equity Interests (other than Equity Interests (or Disqualified Stock or debt securities) sold to a Subsidiary of the Company), plus
  - (c) to the extent that any Restricted Investment that was made after May 11, 2004 is sold for cash or otherwise liquidated or repaid for cash, the lesser of (i) the cash return of capital with respect to such Restricted Investment (less the cost of disposition, if any) and (ii) the initial amount of such Restricted

Investment, plus

- (d) to the extent that any Unrestricted Subsidiary of the Company is redesignated as a Restricted Subsidiary after May 11, 2004, the lesser of (i) the fair market value of the Company's Investment in such Subsidiary as of the date of such redesignation or (ii) such fair market value as of the date on which such Subsidiary was originally designated as an Unrestricted Subsidiary.

As of June 30, 2013, the amount available for Restricted Payments under the foregoing totaled approximately \$2.36 billion.

The preceding provisions will not prohibit:

- (1) the payment of any dividend or distribution or the consummation of any irrevocable redemption of debt that is subordinate to the notes, within 60 days after the date of declaration of such dividend or the delivery of any irrevocable notice of redemption, as the case may be, if the dividend, distribution or redemption payment on the date of declaration or the date of the notice of redemption, as the case may be, would have complied with the provisions of the indenture;

S-43



---

**Table of Contents**

- (2) the redemption, repurchase, retirement, defeasance or other acquisition of any subordinated Indebtedness of the Company or any Guarantor or of any Equity Interests of the Company in exchange for, or out of the net cash proceeds of the substantially concurrent sale (other than to a Subsidiary of the Company) of, Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock), with a sale being deemed substantially concurrent if such redemption, repurchase, retirement, defeasance or acquisition occurs not more than 120 days after such sale; provided that the amount of any such net cash proceeds that are utilized for any such redemption, repurchase, retirement, defeasance or other acquisition will be excluded from clause (3)(b) of the preceding paragraph;
- (3) the defeasance, redemption, repurchase, retirement or other acquisition of subordinated Indebtedness of the Company or any Guarantor with the net cash proceeds from an incurrence of, or in exchange for, Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness;
- (4) the payment of any dividend or distribution by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company to the holders of its Equity Interests on a pro rata basis;
- (5) the repurchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value of any Equity Interests of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company held by any current or former director, officer, employee or consultant of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries pursuant to any equity subscription agreement or plan, stock option agreement or similar agreement or plan; provided that the aggregate price paid for all such repurchased, redeemed, acquired or retired Equity Interests may not exceed \$2.0 million in any twelve-month period;
- (6) the acquisition of Equity Interests by the Company in connection with the exercise of stock options or stock appreciation rights by way of cashless exercise;
- (7) the purchase, repurchase, redemption, defeasance or other acquisition or retirement for value of subordinated Indebtedness of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary (a) at a purchase price not greater than 101.0% of the principal amount thereof (plus accrued and unpaid interest) in the event of a Change of Control in accordance with provisions similar to the covenant described under Repurchase at the Option of Holders Change of Control or (b) at a purchase price not greater than 100.0% of the principal amount thereof (plus accrued and unpaid interest) in accordance with provisions similar to the covenant described under Repurchase at the Option of Holders Asset Sales ; provided that, prior to or simultaneously with such purchase, repurchase, redemption, defeasance or other acquisition or retirement, the Company has made the Change of Control Offer or Asset Sale Offer, as applicable, as provided in such covenants with respect to the notes and has completed the repurchase or redemption of all notes validly tendered for payment in connection with such Change of Control Offer or Asset Sale Offer;
- (8) the payment of cash in lieu of fractional shares of Capital Stock in connection with any transaction otherwise permitted under this covenant; or

(9) other Restricted Payments in an aggregate amount since May 11, 2004 not to exceed \$25.0 million; provided, however, that at the time of, and after giving effect to, any Restricted Payment permitted under clause (9), no Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing or would be caused thereby.

The amount of all Restricted Payments (other than cash) will be the fair market value on the date of the Restricted Payment of the asset(s) or securities proposed to be transferred or issued by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary, as the case may be, pursuant to the Restricted Payment. The fair market value of any assets or securities that are required to be valued by this covenant will be determined, in the case of amounts under \$50.0 million, by an officer of the Company and, in the case of amounts of \$50.0 million or more, by the Board of Directors of the Company, whose determination shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution. Not later than the date of making any Restricted Payment (excluding any Restricted Payment described in the preceding clause (2), (3), (4), (6), (7) or (8)) the Company will deliver to the trustee an officers certificate stating that such

---

**Table of Contents**

Restricted Payment is permitted and setting forth the basis upon which the calculations required by this Restricted Payments covenant were computed. For purposes of determining compliance with this Restricted Payments covenant, in the event that a Restricted Payment meets the criteria of more than one of the categories of Restricted Payments described in the preceding clauses (1) through (9), or is entitled to be made pursuant to the first paragraph of this covenant, the Company will be permitted to divide or classify (or later divide, classify or reclassify in whole or in part in its sole discretion) such Restricted Payment in any manner that complies with this covenant.

*Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock*

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, directly or indirectly, create, incur, issue, assume, guarantee or otherwise become directly or indirectly liable, contingently or otherwise, with respect to (collectively, incur ) any Indebtedness (including Acquired Debt), neither the Company nor any Guarantor will issue any Disqualified Stock, and the Company will not permit any of its other Restricted Subsidiaries to issue any shares of preferred stock; provided, however, that the Company and any Guarantor may incur Indebtedness (including Acquired Debt) or issue Disqualified Stock, if the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio for the Company's most recently ended four full fiscal quarters for which internal financial statements are available immediately preceding the date on which such additional Indebtedness is incurred or such Disqualified Stock is issued would have been at least 2.0 to 1.0, determined on a pro forma basis (including a pro forma application of the net proceeds therefrom), as if the additional Indebtedness had been incurred or Disqualified Stock had been issued, as the case may be, at the beginning of such four-quarter period.

The first paragraph of this covenant will not prohibit the incurrence of any of the following items of Indebtedness (collectively, Permitted Debt ):

- (1) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of additional Indebtedness (including letters of credit) under one or more Credit Facilities in an aggregate principal amount at any one time outstanding under this clause (1) (with letters of credit being deemed to have a principal amount equal to the maximum potential liability of the Company and its Subsidiaries thereunder) not to exceed an amount equal to the greater of (a) \$1.25 billion or (b) 30% of ACNTA as of the date of such incurrence;
- (2) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of the Existing Indebtedness;
- (3) the incurrence by the Company and the Guarantors of Indebtedness represented by the notes issued and sold in this offering and the related Subsidiary Guarantees to be issued on the Issue Date;
- (4) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Indebtedness represented by Capital Lease Obligations, mortgage financings or purchase money obligations, in each case, incurred for the purpose of financing all or any part of the purchase price or cost of design, construction, installation or improvement of property, plant or equipment used in the business of the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary, in an aggregate principal amount at any time outstanding, including all Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness incurred to renew, refund, refinance or replace, defease or discharge any Indebtedness incurred pursuant to this clause (4), not to exceed the greater of (a) \$75.0 million or (b) 1.0% of ACNTA as of the date of such incurrence at any time outstanding;

- (5) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness in exchange for, or the net proceeds of which are used to refund, refinance or replace Indebtedness (other than intercompany Indebtedness) that was permitted by the indenture to be incurred under the first paragraph of this covenant or clause (2) or (3) of this paragraph or this clause (5);

S-45

**Table of Contents**

- (6) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of intercompany Indebtedness between or among the Company and any of its Restricted Subsidiaries; provided, however, that:
  - (a) if the Company is the obligor on such Indebtedness and a Guarantor is not the obligee, such Indebtedness must be expressly subordinated to the prior payment in full in cash of all Obligations with respect to the notes, or if a Guarantor is the obligor on such Indebtedness and neither the Company nor another Guarantor is the obligee, such Indebtedness must be expressly subordinated to the prior payment in full in cash of all Obligations with respect to the Subsidiary Guarantee of such Guarantor; and
  - (b) (i) any subsequent issuance or transfer of Equity Interests that results in any such Indebtedness being held by a Person other than the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company and (ii) any sale or other transfer of any such Indebtedness to a Person that is neither the Company nor a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company will be deemed, in each case, to constitute an incurrence of such Indebtedness by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary, as the case may be, that was not permitted by this clause (6);
- (7) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Hedging Obligations;
- (8) the guarantee by the Company or any of the Guarantors of Indebtedness of the Company or any Guarantor that was permitted to be incurred by another provision of this covenant;
- (9) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of obligations relating to net gas balancing positions arising in the ordinary course of business and consistent with past practice;
- (10) the incurrence by the Company's Unrestricted Subsidiaries of Non-Recourse Debt; provided, however, that if any such Indebtedness ceases to be Non-Recourse Debt of an Unrestricted Subsidiary, such event will be deemed to constitute an incurrence of Indebtedness by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that was not permitted by this clause (10);
- (11) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Indebtedness in respect of bid, performance, surety and similar bonds issued for the account of the Company and any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in the ordinary course of business, including guarantees and obligations of the Company and any of its Restricted Subsidiaries with respect to letters of credit supporting such obligations (in each case other than an obligation for money borrowed);
- (12) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Indebtedness arising from agreements of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries providing for indemnification, adjustment of purchase price or similar obligations, in each case, incurred or assumed in connection with the disposition of any business, assets or Capital Stock of a Subsidiary, provided that the maximum aggregate liability in respect of

all such Indebtedness shall at no time exceed the gross proceeds actually received by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries in connection with such disposition;

- (13) Indebtedness arising from the honoring by a bank or other financial institution of a check, draft or similar instrument inadvertently (except in the case of daylight overdrafts) drawn against insufficient funds in the ordinary course of business; provided, however, that such Indebtedness is promptly extinguished;
- (14) Indebtedness arising in connection with endorsement of instruments for deposit in the ordinary course of business;
- (15) Indebtedness owed on a short-term basis to banks and other financial institutions incurred in the ordinary course of business of the Company and any Restricted Subsidiary with such banks or financial institutions that arises in connection with ordinary banking arrangements to manage cash balances of the Company and any Restricted Subsidiary;

---

**Table of Contents**

(16) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Acquired Debt in connection with a transaction meeting either one of the financial tests set forth in clause (4) under Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Asset Sales; and

(17) the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of additional Indebtedness in an aggregate principal amount (or accreted value, as applicable) at any time outstanding, not to exceed the greater of (a) \$250.0 million or (b) 2.5% of ACNTA as of the date of incurrence.

For purposes of determining compliance with this Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock covenant, in the event that an item of Indebtedness (including Acquired Debt) meets the criteria of more than one of the categories of Permitted Debt described in clauses (1) through (17) above, or is entitled to be incurred pursuant to the first paragraph of this covenant, the Company will be permitted to divide and classify (or later divide, classify, reclassify or re-divide in whole or in part in its sole discretion) such item of Indebtedness in any manner that complies with this covenant, except that any indebtedness under Credit Facilities on the Issue Date (after giving effect to this offering and the use of proceeds thereof) shall be considered incurred under the first paragraph of this covenant.

The accrual of interest, the accretion or amortization of original issue discount, the payment of interest on any Indebtedness in the form of additional Indebtedness with the same terms, and the payment of dividends on Disqualified Stock in the form of additional shares of the same class of Disqualified Stock will not be deemed to be an incurrence of Indebtedness or an issuance of Disqualified Stock for purposes of this covenant; provided, in each such case, that the amount thereof is included in Fixed Charges of the Company as accrued. Notwithstanding any other provision of this covenant, the maximum amount of Indebtedness that the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary may incur pursuant to this covenant shall not be deemed exceeded solely as a result of fluctuations in exchange rates or currency values.

*Liens*

The Company will not and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, create, incur, assume or otherwise cause or suffer to exist or become effective any Lien of any kind (other than Permitted Liens) securing Indebtedness or Attributable Debt upon any of their property or assets, now owned or hereafter acquired, unless the notes or any Subsidiary Guarantee of such Restricted Subsidiary, as applicable, is secured on an equal and ratable basis (or on a senior basis to, in the case of obligations subordinated in right of payment to the notes or such Subsidiary Guarantee, as the case may be) with the obligations so secured until such time as such obligations are no longer secured by a Lien.

*Dividend and Other Payment Restrictions Affecting Subsidiaries*

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, directly or indirectly, create or permit to exist or become effective any consensual encumbrance or restriction on the ability of any Restricted Subsidiary to:

- (1) pay dividends or make any other distributions on its Capital Stock to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries, or pay any Indebtedness or other obligations owed to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries;
- (2) make loans or advances to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries; or

- (3) transfer any of its properties or assets to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries.

S-47



**Table of Contents**

However, the preceding restrictions will not apply to encumbrances or restrictions existing under or by reason of:

- (1) agreements governing Existing Indebtedness and Credit Facilities as in effect on the Issue Date and any amendments, modifications, restatements, renewals, increases, supplements, refundings, replacements or refinancings of those agreements, provided that the amendments, modifications, restatements, renewals, increases, supplements, refundings, replacements or refinancings are not materially more restrictive, taken as a whole, with respect to such encumbrances and restrictions than those contained in those agreements on the Issue Date as determined in good faith by the Company;
- (2) the indenture, the notes and the Subsidiary Guarantees;
- (3) applicable law, rule, regulation, order, approval, license, permit or similar restriction;
- (4) any instrument governing Indebtedness or Capital Stock of a Person acquired by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries as in effect at the time of such acquisition, which encumbrance or restriction is not applicable to any Person, or the properties or assets of any Person, other than the Person, or the property or assets of the Person, so acquired, provided that, in the case of Indebtedness, such Indebtedness was permitted by the terms of the indenture to be incurred, and any amendments, restatements, modifications, renewals, supplements, refundings, replacements or refinancings of those agreements; provided that the amendments, restatements, modifications, renewals, supplements, refundings, replacements or refinancings are not materially more restrictive, taken as a whole, with respect to such encumbrances and restrictions than those contained in those agreements on the date of such acquisition as determined in good faith by the Company;
- (5) customary non-assignment provisions in leases entered into in the ordinary course of business and consistent with past practices;
- (6) Capital Lease Obligations or purchase money obligations, in each case for property acquired in the ordinary course of business that impose restrictions on that property of the nature described in clause (3) of the preceding paragraph;
- (7) any agreement for the sale or other disposition of a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that restricts distributions and/or transfers of properties and assets by that Restricted Subsidiary pending its sale or other disposition;
- (8) Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness, provided that the restrictions contained in the agreements governing such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness are not materially more restrictive, taken as a whole, than those contained in the agreements governing the Indebtedness being refinanced as determined in good faith by the Company;

- (9) Liens securing Indebtedness otherwise permitted to be incurred under the provisions of the covenant described above under the caption Liens that limit the right of the debtor to dispose of the assets subject to such Liens;
- (10) provisions with respect to the disposition or distribution of assets or property in joint venture agreements, asset sale agreements, stock sale agreements, agreements respecting Permitted Business Investments and other similar agreements entered into (a) in the ordinary course of business or (b) with the Company's approval by its Board of Directors, which limitation is applicable only to property or capital stock that are subject to such agreements;
- (11) restrictions on cash, Cash Equivalents or other deposits or net worth imposed by customers or suppliers under contracts entered into in the ordinary course of business;
- (12) restrictions on the sale, lease or transfer of property or assets arising or agreed to in the ordinary course of business, not relating to any Indebtedness, and that do not, individually or in the aggregate, detract from the value of property or assets of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary in any manner material to the Company and the Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole; and

---

**Table of Contents**

(13) Hedging Obligations permitted to be incurred under the covenant described under the caption Certain Covenants Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock.  
*Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets*

The following will apply to the notes in lieu of the provisions described in the accompanying prospectus under the heading Description of Debt Securities Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets.

The Company may not, directly or indirectly: (1) consolidate or merge with or into another Person (whether or not the Company is the surviving entity); or (2) sell, assign, transfer, lease, convey or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole, in one or more related transactions, to another Person, unless:

- (1) either: (a) the Company is the surviving corporation; or (b) the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than the Company) or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition has been made is an entity organized or existing under the laws of the United States, any state of the United States or the District of Columbia; provided that if the Company or such other Person is not a corporation, a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that is a corporation shall assume by supplemental indenture all obligations of the Company under the notes and the indenture as a co-issuer of the notes;
- (2) the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than the Company) or the Person to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition has been made assumes all the obligations of the Company under the notes and the indenture pursuant to agreements reasonably satisfactory to the trustee;
- (3) immediately after such transaction no Default or Event of Default exists;
- (4) the Company or the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than the Company), or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition has been made will, on the date of such transaction after giving pro forma effect thereto and any related financing transactions as if the same had occurred at the beginning of the applicable four-quarter period, either (a) be permitted to incur at least \$1.00 of additional Indebtedness pursuant to the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio test set forth in the first paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock or (b) have a Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio that is equal to or greater than the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio of the Company immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition; and
- (5) the Company shall have delivered to the trustee an officers certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger or disposition and such supplemental indenture (if any) comply with the indenture.

This *Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets* covenant will not apply to any sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition of assets between or among the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries. Clauses

(3) and (4) of the first paragraph of this covenant will not apply to any merger or consolidation of the Company (a) with or into one of its Restricted Subsidiaries for any purpose or (b) with or into an Affiliate solely for the purpose of reincorporation of the Company in another jurisdiction.

Although there is a limited body of case law interpreting the phrase substantially all, there is no precise established definition of the phrase under applicable law. Accordingly, in certain circumstances there may be a degree of uncertainty as to whether a particular transaction would involve all or substantially all of the properties or assets of a Person.

**Table of Contents**

*Transactions with Affiliates*

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, make any payment to, or sell, lease, transfer or otherwise dispose of any of its properties or assets to, or purchase any property or assets from, or enter into or make or amend any transaction, contract, agreement, understanding, loan, advance or guarantee with, or for the benefit of, any Affiliate (each, an Affiliate Transaction ) involving aggregate consideration in excess of \$1.0 million, unless:

- (1) the Affiliate Transaction is on terms that are not materially less favorable to the Company or the relevant Restricted Subsidiary than those that would have been obtained in a comparable transaction by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary with an unrelated Person or, if in the good faith judgment of the Company's Board of Directors, no comparable transaction is available with which to compare such Affiliate Transaction, such Affiliate Transaction is otherwise fair to the Company or the relevant Restricted Subsidiary from a financial point of view; and
- (2) the Company delivers to the trustee:
  - (a) with respect to any Affiliate Transaction or series of related Affiliate Transactions involving aggregate consideration in excess of \$20.0 million, an officer's certificate certifying that such Affiliate Transaction complies with this covenant; and
  - (b) with respect to any Affiliate Transaction or series of related Affiliate Transactions involving aggregate consideration in excess of \$50.0 million, an officer's certificate certifying that such Affiliate Transaction has been approved by a majority of the disinterested members of the Board of Directors.

The following items will not be deemed to be Affiliate Transactions and, therefore, will not be subject to the provisions of the prior paragraph:

- (1) any employment, severance or consulting agreement or other compensation agreement, arrangement or plan, or any amendment thereto, entered into by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in the ordinary course of business;
- (2) transactions between or among any of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries;
- (3) transactions with a Person that is an Affiliate of the Company solely because the Company owns an Equity Interest in such Person;
- (4) payment of reasonable directors' fees, consulting fees and other benefits to persons who are not otherwise Affiliates of the Company;

- (5) provision of officers and directors indemnification and insurance in the ordinary course of business to the extent permitted by law;
- (6) sales of Equity Interests (other than Disqualified Stock) to Affiliates of the Company;
- (7) Permitted Investments and Restricted Payments that are permitted by the provisions of the indenture described above under the caption Restricted Payments;
- (8) any transaction in which the Company or its Restricted Subsidiaries, as the case may be, deliver to the trustee a letter from an accounting, appraisal or investment banking firm of national standing stating that such transaction is fair to the Company or its Restricted Subsidiary from a financial point of view or that such transaction meets the requirements of clause (1) of the initial paragraph above;
- (9) transactions with Unrestricted Subsidiaries, Affiliates, customers, clients, suppliers or purchasers or sellers of goods or services, or lessors or lessees of property, in each case in the ordinary course of business and otherwise in compliance with the terms of the indenture which are, in the aggregate (taking into account all the costs and benefits associated with such transactions) materially no less favorable to the Company or its Restricted Subsidiaries than those that would have been obtained in a

---

**Table of Contents**

comparable transaction by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary with an unrelated person, in the good faith determination of the Company's Board of Directors, or are on terms at least as favorable as might reasonably have been obtained at such time from an unaffiliated party; and

- (10) transactions between the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries and any Person, a director of which is also a director of the Company or any direct or indirect parent of the Company; provided, however, that such director abstains from voting as a director of the Company or such direct or indirect parent, as the case may be, on any matter involving such other Person.

*Designation of Restricted and Unrestricted Subsidiaries*

The Board of Directors of the Company may designate any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company to be an Unrestricted Subsidiary if that designation would not cause a Default. If a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company is designated as an Unrestricted Subsidiary, the aggregate fair market value of all outstanding Investments owned by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries in the Subsidiary properly designated will be deemed to be an Investment made as of the time of the designation and will reduce the amount available for Restricted Payments under the first paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption Restricted Payments or represent Permitted Investments, as determined by the Company. That designation will only be permitted if the Investment would be permitted at that time and if the Subsidiary so designated otherwise meets the definition of an Unrestricted Subsidiary.

The Board of Directors of the Company may at any time designate any Unrestricted Subsidiary to be a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company; provided that such designation will be deemed to be an incurrence of Indebtedness by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company of any outstanding Indebtedness of such Unrestricted Subsidiary and such designation will only be permitted if (1) such Indebtedness is permitted under the covenant described above under the caption Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock, calculated on a pro forma basis as if such designation had occurred at the beginning of the four-quarter reference period, and (2) no Default or Event of Default would be in existence following such designation.

*Additional Subsidiary Guarantees*

If the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries acquires or creates another Material Domestic Subsidiary after the Issue Date, or if any Restricted Subsidiary that is not already a Guarantor guarantees any other Indebtedness of the Company in a principal amount in excess of \$1.0 million after such date, then in either case that Subsidiary will become a Guarantor by executing a supplemental indenture and delivering it to the trustee within 20 Business Days of the date on which it was acquired or created or guaranteed such Indebtedness of the Company, as the case may be; provided, however, that (a) the foregoing shall not apply to Subsidiaries of the Company that have properly been designated as Unrestricted Subsidiaries in accordance with the indenture for so long as they continue to constitute Unrestricted Subsidiaries, and (b) Whiting Programs, Inc. shall not be required to become a Guarantor unless it guarantees Indebtedness of the Company in a principal amount in excess of \$1.0 million other than the Company's 7% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2014 that are outstanding on the Issue Date.

*Reports*

Whether or not required by the Commission, so long as any notes are outstanding, the Company will file with the Commission for public availability within the time period specified in the Commission's rules and regulations (unless the Commission will not accept such a filing), and the Company will furnish to the trustee and, upon its request, to any of the Holders of notes, within 10 Business Days of filing, or attempting to file, the same with the Commission:

- (1) all quarterly and annual financial and other information with respect to the Company and its Subsidiaries that would be required to be contained in a filing with the Commission on Forms 10-Q and

S-51



**Table of Contents**

10-K if the Company were required to file such Forms, including a Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations and, with respect to the annual information only, a report on the annual financial statements by the Company's certified independent accountants; and

- (2) all current reports that would be required to be filed with the Commission on Form 8-K if the Company were required to file such reports.

The Company's filing of any such information, document or report with the Commission pursuant to its Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval (or EDGAR) system or any successor thereto shall satisfy the reporting obligations described above.

If the Company has designated any of its Subsidiaries as Unrestricted Subsidiaries, then the quarterly and annual financial information required by the preceding paragraph will include a reasonably detailed presentation, either on the face of the financial statements or in the footnotes thereto, and in Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations, of the financial condition and results of operations of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries separate from the financial condition and results of operations of the Unrestricted Subsidiaries of the Company.

*Covenant Termination*

If at any time (a) the rating assigned to the notes by both S&P and Moody's is an Investment Grade Rating and (b) no Default has occurred and is continuing under the indenture, then upon delivery by the Company to the trustee of an officers' certificate to the foregoing effect, the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries will no longer be subject to the provisions of the indenture described above under the caption Repurchase at the Option of Holders Asset Sales and the following provisions of the indenture described above under the caption Certain Covenants :

Restricted Payments,

Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock,

Dividend and Other Payment Restrictions Affecting Subsidiaries,

Clause (4) of the second paragraph of Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets,

Transactions with Affiliates, and

Business Activities.

However, the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries will remain subject to the provisions of the indenture described above under the caption Repurchase at the Option of Holders Change of Control, and the following provisions of the indenture described above under the caption Covenants :

Liens,

Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets (other than clause (4) of such covenant),

Designation of Restricted and Unrestricted Subsidiaries,

Additional Subsidiary Guarantees, and

Reports.

S-52

**Table of Contents**

*Events of Default and Remedies*

In lieu of the Events of Default described in the accompanying prospectus under Description of Debt Securities Events of Default, each of the following is an Event of Default with respect to the notes of each series:

- (1) default for 30 days in the payment when due of interest on the notes of such series;
- (2) default in payment when due of the principal of, or premium, if any, on the notes of such series, whether upon maturity, redemption or otherwise;
- (3) failure by the Company to comply with the provisions described under the captions Certain Covenants Restricted Payments, Certain Covenants Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock or Certain Covenants Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets;
- (4) failure by the Company to comply with the provisions described under the captions Repurchase at the Option of Holders Asset Sales or Repurchase at the Option of Holders Change of Control with respect to notes of such series;
- (5) failure by the Company for 60 days (or 180 days in the case of a Reporting Failure) after notice by the trustee or Holders of 25% of the outstanding principal amount of the notes of such series to comply with any of the other agreements in the indenture;
- (6) default under any mortgage, indenture or instrument under which there may be issued or by which there may be secured or evidenced any Indebtedness for money borrowed by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries (or the payment of which is guaranteed by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries), whether such Indebtedness or guarantee now exists, or is created after the Issue Date, if that default:
  - (a) is caused by a failure to pay principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on such Indebtedness prior to the expiration of the grace period provided in such Indebtedness (a Payment Default ); or
  - (b) results in the acceleration of such Indebtedness prior to its Stated Maturity, and, in each case, the principal amount of any such Indebtedness, together with the principal amount of any other such Indebtedness under which there has been a Payment Default or the maturity of which has been so accelerated, aggregates \$50.0 million or more; provided, that if any such default is cured or waived or any such acceleration is rescinded, or such Indebtedness is repaid, within a period of 10 days from the continuation of such default beyond the applicable grace period or the occurrence of such acceleration, as the case may be, such Event of Default under the indenture and any consequential acceleration of the notes shall be automatically rescinded;

- (7) failure by the Company or any of its Significant Subsidiaries to pay final judgments aggregating in excess of \$50.0 million, which judgments are not paid, discharged or stayed (including a stay pending appeal) for a period of 60 days after the date of such final judgment (or, if later, the date when payment is due pursuant to such judgment);
- (8) except as permitted by the indenture, any Subsidiary Guarantee shall be held in any judicial proceeding to be unenforceable or invalid or shall cease for any reason to be in full force and effect or any Guarantor, or any Person acting on behalf of any Guarantor, shall deny or disaffirm its obligations under its Subsidiary Guarantee (other than by reason of release of a Guarantor from its Subsidiary Guarantee in accordance with the terms of the indenture); and
- (9) certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization described in the indenture with respect to the Company or any of its Significant Subsidiaries or any group of Subsidiaries of the Company that, taken as a whole, would constitute a Significant Subsidiary.

In the case of an Event of Default arising from certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization, with respect to the Company, any Subsidiary of the Company that is a Significant Subsidiary or any group of Subsidiaries of the Company that, taken together, would constitute a Significant Subsidiary, all outstanding notes

## **Table of Contents**

will become due and payable immediately without further action or notice. If any other Event of Default occurs and is continuing, the trustee or the Holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding notes of each affected series may declare all the notes of such series to be due and payable immediately. An Event of Default for the notes will not necessarily constitute an Event of Default for any other series of debt securities that may be issued under the indenture in the future and vice versa.

Holders of the notes may not enforce the indenture or the notes except as provided in the indenture. Subject to certain limitations, Holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding notes of each series may direct the trustee in its exercise of any trust or power with respect to such series. The trustee may withhold from Holders notice of any continuing Default or Event of Default with respect to the notes if it determines that withholding notice is in their interest, except a Default or Event of Default relating to the payment of principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on, the notes.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the notes of a series then outstanding by notice to the trustee may on behalf of the Holders of all of the notes of such series waive any past Default or Event of Default with respect to such notes and its consequences under the indenture except a continuing Default or Event of Default in the payment of principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on such notes or in respect of a covenant that cannot be amended without the consent of each Holder of such notes.

The Company is required to deliver to the trustee annually a statement regarding compliance with the indenture. Upon becoming aware of any Default or Event of Default with respect to the notes, the Company is required to deliver to the trustee a statement specifying such Default or Event of Default.

### *No Personal Liability of Directors, Officers, Employees and Stockholders*

No director, officer, employee, incorporator or stockholder or other owner of Capital Stock of the Company or any Guarantor, as such, will have any liability for any obligations of the Company or any Guarantor under the notes, the indenture or the Subsidiary Guarantees, or for any claim based on, in respect of, or by reason of, such obligations or their creation. Each Holder of notes by accepting a note waives and releases all such liability. The waiver and release are part of the consideration for issuance of the notes. The waiver may not be effective to waive liabilities under the federal securities laws.

### *Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance*

The following will apply with respect to the notes in lieu of the provisions described in the accompanying prospectus under Description of Debt Securities Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance.

The Company may, at its option and at any time, elect to have all of its obligations discharged with respect to the outstanding notes of each series and all obligations of the Guarantors discharged with respect to their Subsidiary Guarantees of such notes ( Legal Defeasance ) except for:

- (1) the rights of Holders of outstanding notes to receive payments in respect of the principal of, and interest or premium, if any, on such notes when such payments are due from the trust referred to below;
- (2)

the Company's obligations with respect to the notes concerning issuing temporary notes, registration of notes, mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen notes and the maintenance of an office or agency for payment and money for security payments held in trust;

(3) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the trustee, and the Company's obligations in connection therewith; and

(4) the Legal Defeasance provisions of the indenture.

In addition, the Company may, at its option and at any time, elect to have its obligations released with respect to certain covenants (including the obligation to make a Change of Control Offer and Asset Sale Offer) that are described in the indenture ( Covenant Defeasance ) and thereafter any omission to comply with those

**Table of Contents**

covenants will not constitute a Default or Event of Default with respect to the notes of the applicable series. In the event Covenant Defeasance occurs, certain events (not including non-payment, bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization events) described under Events of Default and Remedies will no longer constitute an Event of Default with respect to the notes of such series. If the Company exercises either its Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance option, each Guarantor will be released and relieved of any obligations under its Subsidiary Guarantee with respect to the applicable series of notes and any security for such notes (other than the trust) will be released.

In order to exercise either Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance with respect to a series of notes:

- (1) the Company must irrevocably deposit with the trustee, in trust, for the benefit of the Holders of such notes, cash in U.S. dollars, non-callable Government Securities, or a combination of cash in U.S. dollars and non-callable Government Securities, in amounts as will be sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized investment bank, appraisal firm or firm of independent public accountants, to pay the principal of, and interest and premium, if any, on the outstanding notes of such series on the date of fixed maturity or on the applicable redemption date, as the case may be, and the Company must specify whether such notes are being defeased to the date of fixed maturity or to a particular redemption date;
- (2) in the case of Legal Defeasance, the Company has delivered to the trustee an opinion of counsel reasonably acceptable to the trustee confirming that:
  - (a) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling; or
  - (b) since the Issue Date, there has been a change in the applicable federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion of counsel will confirm that, the Holders of the outstanding notes of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Legal Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Legal Defeasance had not occurred;
- (3) in the case of Covenant Defeasance, the Company has delivered to the trustee an opinion of counsel reasonably acceptable to the trustee confirming that the Holders of the outstanding notes of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Covenant Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Covenant Defeasance had not occurred;
- (4) no Default or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing on the date of such deposit (other than a Default or Event of Default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit and any similar concurrent deposit relating to other Indebtedness, and the granting of Liens to secure such borrowing);

- (5) such Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any material agreement or instrument (other than the indenture and the agreements governing any other Indebtedness being defeased, discharged or replaced) to which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is a party or by which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is bound;
- (6) the Company must deliver to the trustee an officers certificate stating that the deposit was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders of such notes over the other creditors of the Company or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding creditors of the Company or others; and
- (7) the Company must deliver to the trustee an officers certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent relating to the Legal Defeasance or the Covenant Defeasance have been complied with.

S-55



**Table of Contents**

**Amendment, Supplement and Waiver**

The following will apply with respect to the notes in lieu of the provisions described in the accompanying prospectus under Description of Debt Securities Modification and Waiver.

Except as provided in the next three succeeding paragraphs, the indenture, the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees may be amended or supplemented with the consent of the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the notes of each affected series (voting or consenting as a separate series) then outstanding (including, without limitation, consents obtained in connection with a purchase of, or tender offer or exchange offer for, notes), and any existing default or compliance with any provision of the indenture, the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees may be waived with the consent of the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding notes of each affected series (voting or consenting as a separate series) (including, without limitation, consents obtained in connection with a purchase of, or tender offer or exchange offer for, notes).

Without the consent of each Holder affected, an amendment, supplement or waiver may not (with respect to any notes held by a non-consenting Holder):

- (1) reduce the principal amount of notes whose Holders must consent to an amendment, supplement or waiver;
- (2) reduce the principal of or change the fixed maturity of any note or alter the provisions with respect to the redemption or repurchase of the notes (other than provisions relating to the covenants described above under the caption Repurchase at the Option of Holders );
- (3) reduce the rate of or change the time for payment of interest on any note;
- (4) waive a Default or Event of Default in the payment of principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on the notes (except a rescission of acceleration of the notes by the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the notes and a waiver of the payment default that resulted from such acceleration);
- (5) make any note payable in currency other than that stated in the notes;
- (6) make any change in the provisions of the indenture relating to waivers of past Defaults or the rights of Holders of notes to receive payments of principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on the notes (other than as permitted in clause (7) below);
- (7) waive a redemption or repurchase payment with respect to any note (other than a payment required by one of the covenants described above under the caption Repurchase at the Option of Holders );
- (8)

release any Guarantor from any of its obligations under its Subsidiary Guarantee or the indenture, except in accordance with the terms of the indenture; or

(9) make any change in the preceding amendment, supplement and waiver provisions.

The consent of the Holders of notes is not necessary under the indenture to approve the particular form of any proposed amendment. It is sufficient if such consent approves the substance of the proposed amendment.

Notwithstanding the preceding, without the consent of any Holder of notes, the Company, the Guarantors and the trustee may amend or supplement the indenture, the notes or Subsidiary Guarantees:

- (1) to cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency;
- (2) to provide for uncertificated notes in addition to or in place of certificated notes;
- (3) to provide for the assumption of the Company's or a Guarantor's obligations to Holders of notes in the case of a merger or consolidation or sale of all or substantially all of the Company's or such Guarantor's properties or assets;

**Table of Contents**

- (4) to make any change that would provide any additional rights or benefits to the Holders of notes or that does not adversely affect the legal rights under the indenture of any Holder, provided that any change to conform the indenture to this prospectus supplement will not be deemed to adversely affect the legal rights under the indenture of any holder;
- (5) to secure the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees pursuant to the requirements of the covenant described above under the subheading Certain Covenants Liens;
- (6) to provide for the issuance of additional notes in accordance with the limitations set forth in the indenture;
- (7) to add any additional Guarantor or to evidence the release of any Guarantor from its Subsidiary Guarantee, in each case as provided in the indenture;
- (8) to comply with requirements of the Commission in order to effect or maintain the qualification of the indenture under the Trust Indenture Act;
- (9) to evidence or provide for the acceptance of appointment under the indenture of a successor trustee;
- (10) to add to, change or eliminate any provisions of the indenture in respect of one or more other series of debt securities; or

- (11) to establish the forms or terms of debt securities of any other series as permitted by the indenture.

Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries shall, directly or indirectly, pay or cause to be paid any consideration, whether by way of interest, fee or otherwise, to any Beneficial Owner or Holder of any notes for or as an inducement to any consent to any waiver, supplement or amendment of any terms or provisions of the indenture or the notes, unless such consideration is offered to be paid or agreed to be paid to all Beneficial Owners and Holders of the notes of the applicable series which so consent in the time frame set forth in solicitation documents relating to such consent.

**Satisfaction and Discharge**

The following will apply with respect to the notes in lieu of the provisions described in the accompanying prospectus under Description of the Debt Securities Satisfaction and Discharge.

The indenture will be discharged and will cease to be of further effect as to all notes of each series issued thereunder (except as to surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of the notes and as otherwise specified in the indenture) when:

- (1) either:

- (a) all outstanding notes of that series that have been authenticated (except lost, stolen or destroyed notes that have been replaced or paid and notes for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust and thereafter repaid to us) have been delivered to the trustee for cancellation; or
  - (b) all outstanding notes of that series that have not been delivered to the trustee for cancellation have become due and payable or will become due and payable at their maturity within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the trustee and in any case we have irrevocably deposited with the trustee as trust funds money in an amount sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay the entire indebtedness of such notes not delivered to the trustee for cancellation, for principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest to the maturity or redemption date;
- (2) we have paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable by us under the indenture with respect to the notes of that series;
- (3) we have delivered an Officers Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the trustee stating that all conditions precedent to satisfaction and discharge of the Indenture with respect to the notes of that series have been satisfied; and

## **Table of Contents**

- (4) we have delivered to the trustee an Officer's Certificate stating that the payments of principal and interest when due and without reinvestment of the deposited U.S. Government Obligations plus any deposited money without reinvestment will provide cash at such times and in such amounts as will be sufficient to pay principal and interest when due on all the notes to maturity or redemption, as the case may be.

### **Concerning the Trustee**

The trustee, The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N. A., also acts as trustee under the indentures for our outstanding senior subordinated notes.

If the trustee becomes a creditor of the Company or any Guarantor, the indenture limits its right to obtain payment of claims in certain cases, or to realize on certain property received in respect of any such claim as security or otherwise. The trustee will be permitted to engage in other transactions; however, if it acquires any conflicting interest (as defined in the Trust Indenture Act) after a Default has occurred and is continuing, it must eliminate such conflict within 90 days, apply to the Commission for permission to continue or resign.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding notes of each series will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for exercising any remedy available to the trustee with respect to the notes of such series, subject to certain exceptions. The indenture provides (by reference to the Trust Indenture Act) that in case an Event of Default occurs and is continuing, the trustee will be required, in the exercise of its power, to use the degree of care of a prudent man in the conduct of his own affairs. Subject to such provisions, the trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the indenture at the request of any Holder of notes, unless such Holder has offered to the trustee reasonable security or indemnity against any cost, expense or liability the trustee might incur.

### **Governing Law**

The indenture, the notes and the Subsidiary Guarantees will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

### **Book-Entry, Delivery and Form**

Except as set forth below, notes will be issued only in registered, global form. Notes will be issued at the closing of this offering only against payment in immediately available funds.

Initially, the notes of each series will be represented by one or more permanent global notes in registered form without interest coupons (collectively, the Global Notes). The Global Notes will be deposited upon issuance with the trustee as custodian for The Depository Trust Company (DTC), in New York, New York, and registered in the name of DTC's nominee, Cede & Co., in each case for credit to an account of a direct or indirect participant in DTC as described below. Beneficial interests in the Global Notes may be held through the Euroclear System (Euroclear) and Clearstream Banking, S.A. (Clearstream) (as indirect participants in DTC).

Except as set forth below, the Global Notes may be transferred, in whole but not in part, only to another nominee of DTC or to a successor of DTC or its nominee. Beneficial interests in the Global Notes may not be exchanged for definitive notes in registered, certificated form (Certificated Notes), except in the limited circumstances described below. See Exchange of Global Notes for Certificated Notes. In addition, transfers of beneficial interests in the Global Notes will be subject to the applicable rules and procedures of DTC and its direct or indirect participants (including, if applicable, those of Euroclear and Clearstream), which may change from time to time.

S-58

## Table of Contents

### **Depository Procedures**

The following description of the operations and procedures of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream are provided solely as a matter of convenience. These operations and procedures are solely within the control of the respective settlement systems and are subject to changes by them. We take no responsibility for these operations and procedures and urge investors to contact the system or their participants directly to discuss these matters.

DTC has advised us that DTC is a limited-purpose trust company created to hold securities for its participating organizations (collectively, the Participants ) and to facilitate the clearance and settlement of transactions in those securities between Participants through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of its Participants. The Participants include securities brokers and dealers (including the underwriters), banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations. Access to DTC's system is also available to other entities such as banks, brokers, dealers and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Participant, either directly or indirectly (collectively, the Indirect Participants ). Persons who are not Participants may beneficially own securities held by or on behalf of DTC only through the Participants or the Indirect Participants. The ownership interests in, and transfers of ownership interests in, each security held by or on behalf of DTC are recorded on the records of the Participants and Indirect Participants.

DTC has also advised us that, pursuant to procedures established by it:

- (1) upon deposit of the Global Notes, DTC will credit the accounts of Participants designated by the underwriters with portions of the principal amount of the Global Notes; and
- (2) ownership of these interests in the Global Notes will be shown on, and the transfer of ownership of these interests will be effected only through, records maintained by DTC (with respect to the Participants) or by the Participants and the Indirect Participants (with respect to other owners of beneficial interests in the Global Notes).

Investors in the Global Notes who are Participants in DTC's system may hold their interests therein directly through DTC. Investors in the Global Notes who are not Participants may hold their interests therein indirectly through organizations (including Euroclear and Clearstream) which are Participants in such system. Euroclear and Clearstream may hold interests in the Global Notes on behalf of their participants through customers' securities accounts in their respective names on the books of their respective depositories, which are Euroclear Bank S.A./N.V., as operator of Euroclear, and Citibank, N.A., as operator of Clearstream. All interests in a Global Note, including those held through Euroclear or Clearstream, may be subject to the procedures and requirements of DTC. Those interests held through Euroclear or Clearstream may also be subject to the procedures and requirements of such systems.

The laws of some states require that certain Persons take physical delivery in definitive form of securities that they own. Consequently, the ability to transfer beneficial interests in a Global Note to such Persons will be limited to that extent. Because DTC can act only on behalf of Participants, which in turn act on behalf of Indirect Participants, the ability of a Person having beneficial interests in a Global Note to pledge such interests to Persons that do not participate in the DTC system, or otherwise take actions in respect of such interests, may be affected by the lack of a physical certificate evidencing such interests.

Except as described below, owners of an interest in the Global Notes will not have notes registered in their names, will not receive physical delivery of Certificated Notes and will not be considered the registered owners or Holders

thereof under the indenture for any purpose.

Payments in respect of the principal of, and interest and premium, if any, on a Global Note registered in the name of DTC or its nominee will be payable to DTC in its capacity as the registered Holder under the indenture. Under the terms of the indenture, the Company and the trustee will treat the Persons in whose names the notes, including the Global Notes, are registered as the owners of the notes for the purpose of receiving payments and

S-59



---

**Table of Contents**

for all other purposes. Consequently, neither the Company, the trustee nor any agent of the Company or the trustee has or will have any responsibility or liability for:

- (1) any aspect of DTC's records or any Participant's or Indirect Participant's records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in the Global Notes or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any of DTC's records or any Participant's or Indirect Participant's records relating to the beneficial ownership interests in the Global Notes; or
- (2) any other matter relating to the actions and practices of DTC or any of its Participants or Indirect Participants.

DTC has advised us that its current practice, at the due date of any payment in respect of securities such as the notes, is to credit the accounts of the relevant Participants with the payment on the payment date unless DTC has reason to believe it will not receive payment on such payment date. Each relevant Participant is credited with an amount proportionate to its beneficial ownership of an interest in the principal amount of the notes as shown on the records of DTC. Payments by the Participants and the Indirect Participants to the beneficial owners of notes will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices and will be the responsibility of the Participants or the Indirect Participants and will not be the responsibility of DTC, the trustee or the Company. Neither the Company nor the trustee will be liable for any delay by DTC or any of its Participants in identifying the beneficial owners of the notes, and the Company and the trustee may conclusively rely on and will be protected in relying on instructions from DTC or its nominee for all purposes.

Transfers between Participants in DTC will be effected in accordance with DTC's procedures, and will be settled in same-day funds, and transfers between participants in Euroclear and Clearstream will be effected in accordance with their respective rules and operating procedures.

Cross-market transfers between the Participants in DTC, on the one hand, and Euroclear or Clearstream participants, on the other hand, will be effected through DTC in accordance with DTC's rules on behalf of Euroclear or Clearstream, as the case may be, by its depositary; however, such cross-market transactions will require delivery of instructions to Euroclear or Clearstream, as the case may be, by the counterparty in such system in accordance with the rules and procedures and within the established deadlines (Brussels time) of such system. Euroclear or Clearstream, as the case may be, will, if the transaction meets its settlement requirements, deliver instructions to its respective depositary to take action to effect final settlement on its behalf by delivering or receiving interests in the relevant Global Note in DTC, and making or receiving payment in accordance with normal procedures for same-day funds settlement applicable to DTC. Euroclear participants and Clearstream participants may not deliver instructions directly to the depositories for Euroclear or Clearstream.

DTC has advised us that it will take any action permitted to be taken by a Holder of notes only at the direction of one or more Participants to whose account DTC has credited the interests in the Global Notes and only in respect of such portion of the aggregate principal amount of the notes as to which such Participant or Participants has or have given such direction. However, if there is an Event of Default under the notes, DTC reserves the right to exchange the Global Notes for Certificated Notes and to distribute such notes to its Participants.

Although DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream have agreed to the foregoing procedures to facilitate transfers of interests in the Global Notes among participants in DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream, they are under no obligation to perform or to continue to perform such procedures, and may discontinue such procedures at any time. None of the Company, the

trustee or any of their respective agents will have any responsibility for the performance by DTC, Euroclear or Clearstream or their respective participants or indirect participants of their respective obligations under the rules and procedures governing their operations.

S-60

## **Table of Contents**

### **Exchange of Global Notes for Certificated Notes**

A Global Note is exchangeable for Certificated Notes in minimum denominations of \$2,000 and in integral multiples of \$1,000, if:

- (1) DTC (a) notifies us that it is unwilling or unable to continue as depository for the Global Notes or (b) has ceased to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act and in either event the Company fails to appoint a successor depository within 90 days; or
- (2) there has occurred and is continuing an Event of Default and DTC notifies the trustee of its decision to exchange the Global Note for Certificated Notes.

Certificated Notes delivered in exchange for any Global Note or beneficial interests in Global Notes will be registered in the names, and issued in any approved denominations, requested by or on behalf of the depository (in accordance with its customary procedures).

### **Same Day Settlement and Payment**

The Company will make payments in respect of the notes represented by the Global Notes (including principal, premium, if any, and interest) by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the accounts specified by the Global Note Holder. The Company will make all payments of principal, interest and premium, if any, with respect to Certificated Notes by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the accounts specified by the Holders of the Certificated Notes or, if no such account is specified, by mailing a check to each such Holder's registered address. The notes represented by the Global Notes are expected to trade in DTC's Same-Day Funds Settlement System, and any permitted secondary market trading activity in such notes will, therefore, be required by DTC to be settled in immediately available funds. The Company expects that secondary trading in any Certificated Notes will also be settled in immediately available funds.

Because of time zone differences, the securities account of a Euroclear or Clearstream participant purchasing an interest in a Global Note from a Participant in DTC will be credited, and any such crediting will be reported to the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream participant, during the securities settlement processing day (which must be a business day for Euroclear and Clearstream) immediately following the settlement date of DTC. DTC has advised us that cash received in Euroclear or Clearstream as a result of sales of interests in a Global Note by or through a Euroclear or Clearstream participant to a Participant in DTC will be received with value on the settlement date of DTC but will be available in the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream cash account only as of the business day for Euroclear or Clearstream following DTC's settlement date.

### **Certain Definitions**

Set forth below are certain defined terms used with respect to the notes in the indenture. Reference is made to the indenture for a full disclosure of all such terms, as well as any other capitalized terms used herein for which no definition is provided.

*ACNTA* (Adjusted Consolidated Net Tangible Assets) means (without duplication), as of the date of determination:

(1) the sum of:

- (a) discounted future net revenue from proved crude oil and natural gas reserves of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries calculated in accordance with SEC guidelines before any state or federal income taxes, as estimated in a reserve report prepared as of the end of the Company's most recently completed fiscal year, which reserve report is prepared or reviewed by independent petroleum engineers as to reserves accounting for at least 80% of all such discounted future net revenue and by the Company's petroleum engineers with respect to any other such reserves

S-61

**Table of Contents**

covered by such report, as increased by, as of the date of determination, the discounted future net revenue from:

- (i) estimated proved crude oil and natural gas reserves of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries attributable to acquisitions consummated since the date of such year-end reserve report, and
- (ii) estimated crude oil and natural gas reserves of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries attributable to extensions, discoveries and other additions and upward determinations of estimates of proved crude oil and natural gas reserves (including previously estimated development costs incurred during the period and the accretion of discount since the prior year end) due to exploration, development or exploitation, production or other activities which reserves were not reflected in such year-end reserve report,

in each case calculated in accordance with SEC guidelines (utilizing the prices utilized in such year-end reserve report), and decreased by, as of the date of determination, the discounted future net revenue attributable to

- (iii) estimated proved crude oil and natural gas reserves of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries reflected in such year-end reserve report produced or disposed of since the date of such year-end reserve report and

- (iv) reductions in the estimated proved crude oil and natural gas reserves of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries reflected in such year-end reserve report since the date of such year-end reserve report attributable to downward determinations of estimates of proved crude oil and natural gas reserves due to exploration, development or exploitation, production or other activities conducted or otherwise occurring since the date of such year-end reserve report,

in each case calculated in accordance with SEC guidelines (utilizing the prices utilized in such year-end reserve report); provided, however, that, in the case of each of the determinations made pursuant to clauses (i) through (iv), such increases and decreases shall be as estimated by the Company's engineers, except that if as a result of such acquisitions, dispositions, discoveries, extensions or revisions, there is a Material Change, then such increases and decreases in the discounted future net revenue shall be confirmed in writing by an independent petroleum engineer;

- (b) the capitalized costs that are attributable to crude oil and natural gas properties of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries to which no proved crude oil and natural gas reserves are attributed, based on the Company's books and records as of a date no earlier than the date of the Company's latest annual or quarterly financial statements;
- (c) the Net Working Capital on a date no earlier than the date of the Company's latest annual or quarterly financial statements; and

- (d) the greater of (I) the net book value on a date no earlier than the date of the Company's latest annual or quarterly financial statements or (II) the appraised value, as estimated by independent appraisers, of other tangible assets of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries as of a date no earlier than the date of the Company's latest audited financial statements;
- (2) minus, to the extent not otherwise taken into account in the immediately preceding clause (1), the sum of:
- (a) minority interests;
  - (b) any net gas balancing liabilities of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries reflected in the Company's latest audited financial statements;
  - (c) the discounted future net revenue, calculated in accordance with SEC guidelines (utilizing the same prices utilized in the Company's year-end reserve report), attributable to reserves subject to

S-62

---

**Table of Contents**

participation interests, overriding royalty interests or other interests of third parties, pursuant to participation, partnership, vendor financing or other agreements then in effect, or which otherwise are required to be delivered to third parties;

- (d) the discounted future net revenue, calculated in accordance with SEC guidelines (utilizing the same prices utilized in the Company's year-end reserve report), attributable to reserves that are required to be delivered to third parties to fully satisfy the obligations of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries with respect to Volumetric Production Payments on the schedules specified with respect thereto; and
- (e) the discounted future net revenue, calculated in accordance with SEC guidelines, attributable to reserves subject to Dollar-Denominated Production Payments that, based on the estimates of production included in determining the discounted future net revenue specified in the immediately preceding clause (1)(a) (utilizing the same prices utilized in the Company's year-end reserve report), would be necessary to satisfy fully the obligations of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries with respect to Dollar-Denominated Production Payments on the schedules specified with respect thereto.

If the Company changes its method of accounting for its oil and gas properties from the successful efforts method to the full cost method or a similar method of accounting, ACNTA will continue to be calculated as if the Company were still using the successful efforts method of accounting.

*Acquired Debt* means, with respect to any specified Person:

- (1) Indebtedness of any other Person existing at the time such other Person was merged with or into or became a Subsidiary of such specified Person, whether or not such Indebtedness is incurred in connection with, or in contemplation of, such other Person merging with or into, or becoming a Subsidiary of, such specified Person; provided, however, that Indebtedness of such acquired person which is redeemed, defeased, retired or otherwise repaid at the time of or substantially contemporaneously with the consummation of the transactions by which such Person merges with or into or becomes a Subsidiary of such Person shall not be Acquired Debt; and
- (2) Indebtedness secured by a Lien encumbering any asset acquired by such specified Person.

*Additional Assets* means:

- (1) any assets used or useful in the Oil and Gas Business;
- (2) the Capital Stock of a Person that becomes a Restricted Subsidiary as a result of the acquisition of such Capital Stock by the Company or another Restricted Subsidiary; or
- (3) Capital Stock constituting a minority in any Person that at such time is a Restricted Subsidiary;

provided, however, that any such Restricted Subsidiary described in clause (2) or (3) is primarily engaged in the Oil and Gas Business.

*Affiliate* of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For purposes of this definition, control, as used with respect to any Person, means the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management or policies of such Person, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by agreement or otherwise. For purposes of this definition, the terms controlling, controlled by and under common control with have correlative meanings.

*Asset Sale* means:

- (1) the sale, lease, conveyance or other disposition of any properties or assets (including by way of a Production Payment or sale and leaseback transaction); provided that the sale, lease, conveyance or



**Table of Contents**

other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole will be governed by the provisions of the indenture described above under the caption Repurchase at the Option of Holders Change of Control and/or the provisions described above under the caption Certain Covenants Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets and not by the provisions of the Asset Sale covenant; and

- (2) the issuance of Equity Interests in any of the Company's Restricted Subsidiaries or the sale by the Company or any of the Company's Restricted Subsidiaries of Equity Interests in any of the Company's Restricted Subsidiaries (other than directors' qualifying shares or shares required by applicable law to be held by a Person other than the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary).

Notwithstanding the preceding, the following items will not be deemed to be Asset Sales:

- (1) any single transaction or series of related transactions that involves properties or assets having a fair market value of less than \$15.0 million;
- (2) a transfer of assets between or among any of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries;
- (3) an issuance or sale of Equity Interests by a Restricted Subsidiary to the Company or to another Restricted Subsidiary;
- (4) the sale, lease or other disposition of equipment, inventory, accounts receivable or other properties or assets in the ordinary course of business, including, without limitation, any abandonment, farm-in, farm-out, lease or sublease of any oil and gas properties or the forfeiture or other disposition of such properties pursuant to standard form operating agreements, in each case in the ordinary course of business in a manner customary in the Oil and Gas Business;
- (5) the sale or other disposition of cash or Cash Equivalents;
- (6) a Restricted Payment that is permitted by the covenant described above under the caption Certain Covenants Restricted Payments or a Permitted Investment;
- (7) any trade or exchange by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of oil and gas properties or other properties or assets for oil and gas properties or other properties or assets owned or held by another Person, provided that the fair market value of the properties or assets traded or exchanged by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary (together with any cash) is reasonably equivalent to the fair market value of the properties or assets (together with any cash) to be received by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary, and provided further that any net cash received must be applied in accordance with the provisions described above under the caption Repurchase at the Option of Holders Asset Sales;

- (8) the creation or perfection of a Lien (but not the sale or other disposition of the properties or assets subject to such Lien);
- (9) surrender or waiver of contract rights or the settlement, release or surrender of contract, tort or other claims of any kind; and
- (10) any sale or other disposition of damaged, worn-out or obsolete assets in the ordinary course of business (including the assignment, cancellation or abandonment or other disposition of intellectual property that is, in the reasonable judgment of the Company, no longer economically practicable to maintain or useful in any material respect in the conduct of the business of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as whole).

*Attributable Debt* in respect of a sale and leaseback transaction means, at the time of determination, the present value of the obligation of the lessee for net rental payments during the remaining term of the lease included in such sale and leaseback transaction including any period for which such lease has been extended or

**Table of Contents**

may, at the option of the lessor, be extended. Such present value shall be calculated using a discount rate equal to the rate of interest implicit in such transaction, determined in accordance with GAAP.

*Beneficial Owner* has the meaning assigned to such term in Rule 13d-3 and Rule 13d-5 under the Exchange Act, except that in calculating the beneficial ownership of any particular person (as that term is used in Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act), such person will be deemed to have beneficial ownership of all securities that such person has the right to acquire by conversion or exercise of other securities, whether such right is currently exercisable or is exercisable only upon the occurrence of a subsequent condition. The terms *Beneficially Owns* and *Beneficially Owned* have correlative meanings.

*Board of Directors* means:

- (1) with respect to a corporation, the board of directors of the corporation or any committee thereof duly authorized to act on behalf of such board;
- (2) with respect to a partnership, the Board of Directors of the general partner of the partnership;
- (3) with respect to a limited liability company, the Board of Directors of the managing member, if the managing member is an entity, or the managing member or members or any controlling committee of managing members thereof, if the managing members are individuals; and
- (4) with respect to any other Person, the board or committee of such Person serving a similar function.

*Board Resolution* means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the applicable Person to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors of such Person and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the trustee.

*Business Day* means each day that is not a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in Chicago, Illinois, Denver, Colorado or New York, New York or another place of payment are authorized or required by law to close.

*Capital Lease Obligation* means, at the time any determination is to be made, the amount of the liability in respect of a capital lease that would at that time be required to be capitalized on a balance sheet in accordance with GAAP.

*Capital Stock* means:

- (1) in the case of a corporation, corporate stock;
- (2) in the case of an association or business entity, any and all shares, interests, participations, rights or other equivalents (however designated) of corporate stock;

- (3) in the case of a partnership or limited liability company, partnership or membership interests (whether general or limited); and
- (4) any other interest or participation that confers on a Person the right to receive a share of the profits and losses of, or distributions of assets of, the issuing Person.

*Cash Equivalents* means:

- (1) United States dollars;
- (2) securities issued or directly and fully guaranteed or insured by the United States government or any agency or instrumentality of the United States government (provided that the full faith and credit of the United States is pledged in support of those securities) having maturities of not more than one year from the date of acquisition;
- (3) certificates of deposit and eurodollar time deposits with maturities of one year or less from the date of acquisition, bankers' acceptances with maturities not exceeding one year and overnight bank deposits, in each case, with any lender party to the Credit Agreement or with any domestic commercial bank;

S-65

**Table of Contents**

- (4) repurchase obligations with a term of not more than seven days for underlying securities of the types described in clauses (2) and (3) above entered into with any financial institution meeting the qualifications specified in clause (3) above;
- (5) commercial paper having one of the two highest ratings obtainable from Moody's or S&P and in each case maturing within one year after the date of acquisition;
- (6) money market funds the assets of which primarily constitute Cash Equivalents of the kinds described in clauses (1) through (5) of this definition; and
- (7) repurchase obligations with a term of not more than seven days for underlying securities of the types described in clause (1) above entered into with any financial institution meeting the qualifications specified in clause (3) above.

*Change of Control* means the occurrence of any of the following:

- (1) the direct or indirect sale, lease, transfer, conveyance or other disposition (other than by way of merger or consolidation), in one or a series of related transactions, of all or substantially all of the properties or assets (including Capital Stock of the Restricted Subsidiaries) of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole, to any person (as that term is used in Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act), which occurrence is followed by a Rating Decline within 90 days thereof;
- (2) the adoption of a plan relating to the liquidation or dissolution of the Company;
- (3) the consummation of any transaction (including, without limitation, any merger or consolidation) the result of which is that any person (as that term is used in Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act) becomes the Beneficial Owner, directly or indirectly, of more than 50% of the Voting Stock of the Company, measured by voting power rather than number of shares, which occurrence is followed by a Rating Decline within 90 days thereof; or
- (4) the first day on which a majority of the members of the Board of Directors of the Company are not Continuing Directors, which occurrence is followed by a Rating Decline within 90 days thereof.

*Commission* or SEC means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

*Consolidated Cash Flow* means, with respect to any specified Person for any period, the Consolidated Net Income of such Person for such period plus:

- (1) an amount equal to any extraordinary loss plus any net loss realized by such Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in connection with an Asset Sale, to the extent such losses were deducted in computing such

Consolidated Net Income; plus

- (2) provision for taxes based on income or profits of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period, to the extent that such provision for taxes was deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; plus
- (3) consolidated interest expense of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period, whether paid or accrued and whether or not capitalized (excluding any interest attributable to Dollar-Denominated Production Payments but including, without limitation, amortization of debt issuance costs and original issue discount, non-cash interest payments, the interest component of any deferred payment obligations, the interest component of all payments associated with Capital Lease Obligations, imputed interest with respect to Attributable Debt, commissions, discounts and other fees and charges incurred in respect of letter of credit or bankers acceptance financings), and net of the effect of all payments made or received pursuant to Hedging Obligations, to the extent that any such expense was deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; plus
- (4) depreciation, depletion and amortization (including amortization of intangibles but excluding amortization of prepaid cash expenses that were paid in a prior period), impairment and other non-cash

S-66

**Table of Contents**

expenses (excluding any such non-cash expense to the extent that it represents an accrual of or reserve for cash expenses in any future period or amortization of a prepaid cash expense that was paid in a prior period) of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period to the extent that such depreciation, depletion and amortization, impairment and other non-cash expenses were deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; plus

- (5) unrealized non-cash losses resulting from foreign currency balance sheet adjustments required by GAAP to the extent such losses were deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; minus
- (6) non-cash items increasing such Consolidated Net Income for such period, other than items that were accrued in the ordinary course of business; minus (to the extent included in determining Consolidated Net Income); and
- (7) the sum of (x) the amount of deferred revenues that are amortized during such period and are attributable to reserves that are subject to Volumetric Production Payments and (y) amounts recorded in accordance with GAAP as repayments of principal and interest pursuant to Dollar-Denominated Production Payments, in each case, on a consolidated basis and determined in accordance with GAAP.

*Consolidated Net Income* means, with respect to any specified Person for any period, the aggregate of the Net Income of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period, on a consolidated basis, determined in accordance with GAAP; provided that:

- (1) the Net Income (but not loss) of any Person that is not a Restricted Subsidiary or that is accounted for by the equity method of accounting will be included, but only to the extent of the amount of dividends or distributions paid in cash to the specified Person or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Person;
- (2) the Net Income of any Restricted Subsidiary will be excluded to the extent that the declaration or payment of dividends or similar distributions by that Restricted Subsidiary of that Net Income is not at the date of determination permitted without any prior governmental approval (that has not been obtained) or, directly or indirectly, by operation of the terms of its charter or any agreement, instrument, judgment, decree, order, statute, rule or governmental regulation applicable to that Restricted Subsidiary or its stockholders, partners or members;
- (3) the cumulative effect of a change in accounting principles will be excluded;
- (4) income resulting from transfers of assets (other than cash) between the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries, on the one hand, and an Unrestricted Subsidiary, on the other hand, will be excluded;
- (5)

any write-downs of non-current assets will be excluded; provided that any ceiling limitation write-downs under Commission guidelines shall be treated as capitalized costs, as if such write-downs had not occurred; and

- (6) any unrealized non-cash gains or losses or charges in respect of hedge or non-hedge derivatives (including those resulting from the application of FAS 133 (now codified as FASB Accounting Standards Codification Topic 815)) will be excluded.

In addition, notwithstanding the preceding, for the purposes of the covenant described under Certain Covenants Restricted Payments only, there shall be excluded from Consolidated Net Income any nonrecurring charges relating to any premium or penalty paid, write off of deferred finance costs or other charges in connection with redeeming or retiring any Indebtedness prior to its Stated Maturity.

*Continuing Directors* means, as of any date of determination, any member of the Board of Directors of the Company who:

- (1) was a member of such Board of Directors on the Issue Date; or

S-67



## Table of Contents

(2) was nominated for election or elected to such Board of Directors with the approval of a majority of the Continuing Directors who were members of such Board at the time of such nomination or election.

*Credit Agreement* means that certain Fifth Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of October 15, 2010, as amended, among Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation, the Company, the financial institutions parties thereto, providing for revolving credit borrowings, including any related notes, guarantees, collateral documents, instruments and agreements executed in connection therewith, and in each case as amended, restated, modified, renewed, refunded, replaced or refinanced from time to time.

*Credit Facilities* means one or more debt facilities (including, without limitation, the Credit Agreement), commercial paper facilities or secured capital markets financings, in each case with banks or other institutional lenders or institutional investors providing for revolving credit loans, term loans, receivables financing (including through the sale of receivables to such lenders or to special purpose entities formed to borrow from (or sell receivables to) such lenders against such receivables), letters of credit or secured capital markets financings, in each case, as amended, restated, modified, renewed, refunded, replaced or refinanced (including refinancing with any capital markets transaction) in whole or in part from time to time.

*Default* means any event that is, or with the passage of time or the giving of notice or both would be, an Event of Default.

*Disqualified Stock* means any Capital Stock that, by its terms (or by the terms of any security into which it is convertible, or for which it is exchangeable, in each case at the option of the holder of the Capital Stock), or upon the happening of any event, matures or is mandatorily redeemable, pursuant to a sinking fund obligation or otherwise, or redeemable at the option of the holder of the Capital Stock, in whole or in part, on or prior to the date that is 91 days after the date on which the notes mature. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, any Capital Stock that would constitute Disqualified Stock solely because the holders of the Capital Stock have the right to require the Company to repurchase or redeem such Capital Stock upon the occurrence of a change of control or an asset sale will not constitute Disqualified Stock if the terms of such Capital Stock provide that the Company may not repurchase or redeem any such Capital Stock pursuant to such provisions unless such repurchase or redemption complies with the covenant described above under the caption *Certain Covenants Restricted Payments*.

*Dollar-Denominated Production Payments* means production payment obligations recorded as liabilities in accordance with GAAP, together with all undertakings and obligations in connection therewith.

*Domestic Subsidiary* means any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company other than a Foreign Subsidiary.

*Equity Interests* means Capital Stock and all warrants, options or other rights to acquire Capital Stock (but excluding any debt security that is convertible into, or exchangeable for, Capital Stock).

*Existing Indebtedness* means the aggregate principal amount of Indebtedness of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries (other than Indebtedness under the Credit Agreement which is considered incurred under the first paragraph under the covenant entitled *Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock* ) in existence on the Issue Date, until such amounts are repaid.

*Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio* means with respect to any specified Person for any four-quarter reference period, the ratio of the Consolidated Cash Flow of such Person for such period to the Fixed Charges of such Person for such period. In the event that the specified Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries incurs, assumes, guarantees, repays, repurchases or redeems any Indebtedness (other than ordinary working capital borrowings) or issues, repurchases or redeems preferred stock subsequent to the commencement of the applicable four-quarter reference period and on or

prior to the date on which the event for which the calculation of the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio is made (the Calculation Date ), then the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio will be

S-68

---

**Table of Contents**

calculated giving pro forma effect to such incurrence, assumption, guarantee, repayment, repurchase or redemption of Indebtedness, or such issuance, repurchase or redemption of preferred stock, and the use of the proceeds therefrom as if the same had occurred at the beginning of such period.

In addition, for purposes of calculating the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio:

- (1) acquisitions that have been made by the specified Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries, including through mergers or consolidations and including any related financing transactions, subsequent to the commencement of the applicable four-quarter reference period and on or prior to the Calculation Date will be given pro forma effect as if they had occurred on the first day of such period, including any Consolidated Cash Flow and any pro forma expense and cost reductions that have occurred or are reasonably expected to occur, in the reasonable judgment of the chief financial or accounting officer of the Company (regardless of whether those cost savings or operating improvements could then be reflected in pro forma financial statements in accordance with Regulation S-X promulgated under the Securities Act or any other regulation or policy of the Commission related thereto);
- (2) the Consolidated Cash Flow attributable to discontinued operations, as determined in accordance with GAAP, and operations or businesses disposed of prior to the Calculation Date, will be excluded; and
- (3) the Fixed Charges attributable to discontinued operations, as determined in accordance with GAAP, and operations or businesses disposed of prior to the Calculation Date, will be excluded, but only to the extent that the obligations giving rise to such Fixed Charges will not be obligations of the specified Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries following the Calculation Date.

*Fixed Charges* means, with respect to any specified Person for any period, the sum, without duplication, of:

- (1) the consolidated interest expense of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period, whether paid or accrued (excluding any interest attributable to Dollar-Denominated Production Payments but including, without limitation, amortization of debt issuance costs and original issue discount, non-cash interest payments, the interest component of any deferred payment obligations, the interest component of all payments associated with Capital Lease Obligations, imputed interest with respect to Attributable Debt, commissions, discounts and other fees and charges incurred in respect of letter of credit or bankers acceptance financings), and net of the effect of all payments made or received pursuant to Hedging Obligations; plus
- (2) the consolidated interest expense of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries that was capitalized during such period; plus
- (3) any interest expense on Indebtedness of another Person that is guaranteed by such Person or one of its Restricted Subsidiaries or secured by a Lien on assets of such Person or one of its Restricted Subsidiaries, whether or not such guarantee or Lien is called upon; plus

- (4) all dividends, whether paid or accrued and whether or not in cash, on any series of preferred stock of such Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries, other than dividends on Equity Interests payable solely in Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock) or to the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company,

in each case, on a consolidated basis and in accordance with GAAP.

*Foreign Subsidiary* means any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that was not formed under the laws of the United States or any state of the United States or the District of Columbia and that conducts substantially all of its operations outside the United States.

*GAAP* means generally accepted accounting principles in the United States, which are in effect on the Issue Date.

**Table of Contents**

The term *guarantee* means a guarantee other than by endorsement of negotiable instruments for collection in the ordinary course of business, direct or indirect, in any manner including, without limitation, by way of a pledge of assets or through letters of credit or reimbursement agreements in respect thereof, of all or any part of any Indebtedness. When used as a verb, *guarantee* has a correlative meaning.

*Guarantors* means each of:

- (1) Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation, a Delaware corporation; and
  - (2) any other Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that becomes a Guarantor in accordance with the provisions of the indenture;
- and their respective successors and assigns.

*Hedging Obligations* means, with respect to any specified Person, the obligations of such Person incurred in the normal course of business and consistent with past practices and not for speculative purposes under:

- (1) interest rate swap agreements, interest rate cap agreements and interest rate collar agreements entered into with one of more financial institutions and designed to protect the Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries entering into the agreement against fluctuations in interest rates with respect to Indebtedness incurred and not for purposes of speculation;
- (2) foreign exchange contracts and currency protection agreements entered into with one of more financial institutions and designed to protect the Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries entering into the agreement against fluctuations in currency exchanges rates with respect to Indebtedness incurred and not for purposes of speculation;
- (3) any commodity futures contract, commodity option or other similar agreement or arrangement designed to protect against fluctuations in the price of oil, natural gas or other commodities used, produced, processed or sold by that Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries at the time; and
- (4) other agreements or arrangements designed to protect such Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries against fluctuations in interest rates, commodity prices or currency exchange rates.

*Holder* means a Person in whose name a Note is registered.

*Indebtedness* means, with respect to any specified Person, any indebtedness of such Person, whether or not contingent:

- (1) in respect of borrowed money;

- (2) evidenced by bonds, notes, debentures or similar instruments or letters of credit (or reimbursement agreements in respect thereof);
- (3) in respect of bankers' acceptances;
- (4) representing Capital Lease Obligations;
- (5) representing the balance deferred and unpaid of the purchase price of any property, except any such balance that constitutes an accrued expense or trade payable; or

(6) representing any Hedging Obligations, if and to the extent any of the preceding items (other than letters of credit and Hedging Obligations) would appear as a liability upon a balance sheet of the specified Person prepared in accordance with GAAP. In addition, the term Indebtedness includes all Indebtedness of others secured by a Lien on any asset of the specified Person (whether or not such Indebtedness is assumed by the specified Person) and, to the extent not otherwise included, the guarantee by the specified Person of any Indebtedness of any other Person (including, with respect

**Table of Contents**

to any Production Payment, any warranties or guarantees of production or payment by such Person with respect to such Production Payment, but excluding other contractual obligations of such Person with respect to such Production Payment). Subject to the preceding sentence, neither Dollar-Denominated Production Payments nor Volumetric Production Payments shall be deemed to be Indebtedness.

The amount of any Indebtedness outstanding as of any date will be:

- (1) the accreted value of the Indebtedness, in the case of any Indebtedness issued with original issue discount;
- (2) in the case of any Hedging Obligation, the termination value of the agreement or arrangement giving rise to such Hedging Obligation that would be payable by such Person at such date; and
- (3) the principal amount of the Indebtedness, together with any interest on the Indebtedness that is more than 30 days past due, in the case of any other Indebtedness.

*Investment Grade Rating* means a rating equal to or higher than Baa3 (or the equivalent) by Moody's and BBB- (or the equivalent) by S&P.

*Issue Date* means the date on which notes are first issued under the indenture.

*Investments* means, with respect to any Person, all direct or indirect investments by such Person in other Persons (including Affiliates) in the forms of loans (including guarantees or other obligations), advances or capital contributions (excluding commission, travel and similar advances to officers and employees made in the ordinary course of business), purchases or other acquisitions for consideration of Indebtedness, Equity Interests or other securities, together with all items that are or would be classified as investments on a balance sheet prepared in accordance with GAAP. If the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company sells or otherwise disposes of any Equity Interests of any direct or indirect Restricted Subsidiary of the Company such that, after giving effect to any such sale or disposition, such Person is no longer a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, the Company will be deemed to have made an Investment on the date of any such sale or disposition in an amount equal to the fair market value of the Equity Interests of such Restricted Subsidiary not sold or disposed of in an amount determined as provided in the final paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption Certain Covenants Restricted Payments. The acquisition by the Company or any Subsidiary of the Company of a Person that holds an Investment in a third Person will be deemed to be an Investment made by the Company or such Subsidiary in such third Person in an amount equal to the fair market value of the Investment held by the acquired Person in such third Person on the date of any such acquisition in an amount determined as provided in the final paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption Certain Covenants Restricted Payments.

*Lien* means, with respect to any asset, any mortgage, lien, pledge, charge, security interest or encumbrance of any kind in respect of such asset, whether or not filed, recorded or otherwise perfected under applicable law, including any conditional sale or other title retention agreement, any lease in the nature thereof, any option or other agreement to sell or give a security interest in and any filing of or agreement to give any financing statement under the Uniform Commercial Code (or equivalent statutes) of any jurisdiction other than a precautionary financing statement not intended as a security agreement.

*Material Change* means an increase or decrease (excluding changes that result solely from changes in prices and changes resulting from the incurrence of previously estimated future development costs) of more than 25% during a fiscal quarter in the discounted future net revenues from proved crude oil and natural gas reserves of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries, calculated in accordance with clause (1)(a) of the definition of ACNTA; provided, however, that the following will be excluded from the calculation of Material Change:

- (1) any acquisitions during the fiscal quarter of oil and gas reserves that have been estimated by independent petroleum engineers and with respect to which a report or reports of such engineers exist; and

S-71



**Table of Contents**

- (2) any disposition of properties existing at the beginning of such fiscal quarter that have been disposed of in compliance with the covenant described under *Repurchase at the Option of Holders Assets Sales*.

*Material Domestic Subsidiary* means any one Domestic Subsidiary, or any group of two or more Domestic Subsidiaries, that is not a Guarantor at the time of determination and that at such time has either assets or quarterly revenues in excess of 3.0% of the consolidated assets or quarterly revenues of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries, in each case based upon the most recent quarterly financial statements available to the Company.

*Moody's* means Moody's Investors Service, Inc. or any successor to the rating agency business thereof.

*Net Income* means, with respect to any specified Person, the net income (loss) of such Person, determined in accordance with GAAP and before any reduction in respect of preferred stock dividends, excluding, however:

- (1) any gain (but not loss), together with any related provision for taxes on such gain (but not loss), realized in connection with: (a) any Asset Sale; or (b) the disposition of any securities by such Person or any of its Subsidiaries or the extinguishment of any Indebtedness of such Person or any of its Subsidiaries; and
- (2) any extraordinary gain (but not loss), together with any related provision for taxes on such extraordinary gain (but not loss).

*Net Proceeds* means the aggregate cash proceeds and Cash Equivalents received by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in respect of any Asset Sale (including, without limitation, any cash or Cash Equivalents received upon the sale or other disposition of any non-cash consideration received in any Asset Sale), net of:

- (1) the direct costs relating to such Asset Sale, including, without limitation, legal, accounting and investment banking fees, and sales commissions, and any relocation expenses incurred as a result of the Asset Sale,
- (2) taxes paid or payable as a result of the Asset Sale, in each case, after taking into account any available tax credits or deductions and any tax sharing arrangements,
- (3) amounts required to be applied to the repayment of Indebtedness, other than under the Credit Facilities, secured by a Lien on the properties or assets that were the subject of such Asset Sale, and
- (4) any reserve for adjustment in respect of the sale price of such properties or assets established in accordance with GAAP.

*Net Working Capital* means:

- (1) all current assets of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries, minus

(2) all current liabilities of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries, except current liabilities included in Indebtedness;  
in each case, on a consolidated basis and determined in accordance with GAAP.

*Non-Recourse Debt* means Indebtedness:

- (1) as to which neither the Company nor any of its Restricted Subsidiaries (a) provides credit support of any kind (including any undertaking, agreement or instrument that would constitute Indebtedness), (b) is directly or indirectly liable as a guarantor or otherwise, or (c) is the lender;
- (2) no default with respect to which (including any rights that the holders of the Indebtedness may have to take enforcement action against an Unrestricted Subsidiary) would permit upon notice, lapse of time or

S-72

---

**Table of Contents**

both any holder of any other Indebtedness (other than the notes) of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to declare a default on such other Indebtedness or cause the payment of the Indebtedness to be accelerated or payable prior to its Stated Maturity; and

- (3) as to which the lenders have been notified in writing that they will not have any recourse to the stock or assets of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries.

*Obligations* means any principal, premium, if any, interest (including interest accruing on or after the filing of any petition in bankruptcy or for reorganization, whether or not a claim for post-filing interest is allowed in such proceeding), penalties, fees, charges, expenses, indemnifications, reimbursement obligations, damages, guarantees, and other liabilities or amounts payable under the documentation governing any Indebtedness or in respect thereto.

*Oil and Gas Business* means:

- (1) the acquisition, exploration, development, operation and disposition of interests in oil, natural gas and other hydrocarbon properties;
- (2) the gathering, marketing, treating, processing (but not refining), storage, selling and transporting of any production from those interests; and
- (3) any activity necessary, appropriate or incidental to the activities described above.

*Permitted Business Investments* means Investments made in the ordinary course of, and of a nature that is or shall have become customary in, the Oil and Gas Business, including through agreements, transactions, interests or arrangements that permit one to share risk or costs, comply with regulatory requirements regarding local ownership or satisfy other objectives customarily achieved through the conduct of the Oil and Gas Business jointly with third parties, including without limitation:

- (1) direct or indirect ownership of crude oil, natural gas, other related hydrocarbon and mineral properties or any interest therein or gathering, transportation, processing, storage or related systems; and
- (2) the entry into operating agreements, joint ventures, processing agreements, working interests, royalty interests, mineral leases, farm-in agreements, farm-out agreements, development agreements, production sharing agreements, area of mutual interest agreements, contracts for the sale, transportation or exchange of crude oil and natural gas and related hydrocarbons and minerals, unitization agreements, pooling arrangements, joint bidding agreements, service contracts, partnership agreements (whether general or limited), or other similar or customary agreements, transactions, properties, interests or arrangements and Investments and expenditures in connection therewith or pursuant thereto, in each case made or entered into in the ordinary course of the Oil and Gas Business.

*Permitted Investments* means:

- (1) any Investment in the Company or in a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company;
- (2) any Investment in Cash Equivalents;
- (3) any Investment by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company in a Person, if as a result of such Investment:
  - (a) such Person becomes a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company; or
  - (b) such Person is merged, consolidated or amalgamated with or into, or transfers or conveys substantially all of its properties or assets to, or is liquidated into, the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company;
- (4) any Investment made as a result of the receipt of non-cash consideration from an Asset Sale that was made pursuant to and in compliance with the covenant described above under the caption Repurchase at the Option of Holders Asset Sales;

S-73

**Table of Contents**

- (5) any Investment in any Person solely in exchange for the issuance of Equity Interests (other than Disqualified Stock) of the Company;
- (6) any Investments received in compromise of obligations of trade creditors or customers that were incurred in the ordinary course of business, including pursuant to any plan of reorganization or similar arrangement upon the bankruptcy or insolvency of any trade creditor or customer, or as a result of foreclosure by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries with respect to any secured Investment in default;
- (7) Hedging Obligations permitted to be incurred under the covenant described under the caption Certain Covenants Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock;
- (8) Permitted Business Investments;
- (9) Investments of a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company acquired after the Issue Date or of an entity merged or consolidated with or into the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary in a transaction that is not prohibited by the covenant described under the caption Certain Covenants Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets after the Issue Date to the extent that such Investments were not made in contemplation of such acquisition, merger or consolidation and were in existence on the date of such acquisition, merger or consolidation; and
- (10) other Investments in any Person having an aggregate fair market value (measured on the date each such Investment was made and without giving effect to subsequent changes in value), when taken together with all other Investments made pursuant to this clause (10) that are at the time outstanding, not to exceed the greater of (a) \$250.0 million or (b) 2.5% of ACNTA.

*Permitted Liens* means:

- (1) Liens securing any Indebtedness under any Credit Facility;
- (2) Liens in favor of the Company or the Guarantors;
- (3) Liens on property of a Person existing at the time such Person is merged with or into or consolidated with the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, provided that such Liens were in existence prior to the contemplation of such merger or consolidation and do not extend to any assets other than those of the Person merged into or consolidated with the Company or the Restricted Subsidiary;
- (4) Liens on property (including Capital Stock) existing at the time of acquisition of the property by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, provided that such Liens were in existence prior to the contemplation of such acquisition;

- (5) Liens securing Indebtedness (including Capital Lease Obligations) incurred in connection with the acquisition by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of assets used in the Oil and Gas Business (including the office buildings and other real property used by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary in conducting its operations), provided that (i) such Liens attach only to the assets acquired with the proceeds of such Indebtedness, and (ii) such Indebtedness is not in excess of the purchase price of such fixed assets;
- (6) Liens existing on the Issue Date (other than under the Credit Agreement);
- (7) Liens securing Hedging Obligations of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries;
- (8) any Lien incurred in the ordinary course of business incidental to the conduct of the business of the Company or the Restricted Subsidiaries or the ownership of their property (including (a) easements, rights of way and similar encumbrances, (b) rights or title of lessors under leases (other than Capital Lease Obligations), (c) rights of collecting banks having rights of setoff, revocation, refund or chargeback with respect to money or instruments of the Company or the Restricted Subsidiaries on deposit with or in the possession of such banks, (d) Liens imposed by law, including Liens under

**Table of Contents**

workers compensation or similar legislation and mechanics , carriers , warehousemen s, materialmen s, suppliers and vendors Liens, (e) Liens incurred to secure performance of obligations with respect to statutory or regulatory requirements, performance or return-of-money bonds, surety bonds or other obligations of a like nature and incurred in a manner consistent with industry practice, or (f) operators Liens under joint operating agreements or similar customary agreements in the Oil and Gas Business);

- (9) Liens securing all outstanding notes and the Subsidiary Guarantees thereof;
- (10) Liens securing Indebtedness incurred to refinance Indebtedness incurred under clauses (3), (4) or (5) that was previously so secured, provided that any such Lien is limited to all or part of the same property or assets (plus improvements, accessions, proceeds or dividends or distributions in respect thereof) that secured (or, under the written arrangements under which the original Lien arose, could secure) the Indebtedness being refinanced or is in respect of property that is the security for a Permitted Lien hereunder; and
- (11) Liens incurred in the ordinary course of business of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company with respect to obligations that do not exceed, at the time of incurrence of such Lien, the greater of (a) \$250.0 million or (b) 2.5% of ACNTA at any one time outstanding.

*Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness* means any Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries issued in exchange for, or the net proceeds of which are used to extend, refinance, renew, replace, defease or refund other Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries (other than intercompany Indebtedness); provided that:

- (1) the principal amount (or accreted value, if applicable) of such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness does not exceed the principal amount (or accreted value, if applicable) of the Indebtedness being extended, refinanced, renewed, replaced, defeased or refunded (plus all accrued interest on the Indebtedness and the amount of all expenses and premiums incurred in connection therewith);
- (2) such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness has a final maturity date later than the final maturity date of, and has a Weighted Average Life to Maturity equal to or greater than the Weighted Average Life to Maturity of, the Indebtedness being extended, refinanced, renewed, replaced, defeased or refunded;
- (3) if the Indebtedness being extended, refinanced, renewed, replaced, defeased or refunded is subordinated in right of payment to the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees, such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness is subordinated in right of payment to the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees on terms at least as favorable to the Holders of notes as those contained in the documentation governing the Indebtedness being extended, refinanced, renewed, replaced, defeased or refunded; and
- (4) such Indebtedness is not incurred by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company if the Company is the obligor on the Indebtedness being extended, refinanced, renewed, replaced, defeased or refunded; provided, however, that a Restricted Subsidiary that is also a Guarantor may guarantee Permitted Refinancing

Indebtedness incurred by the Company, whether or not such Restricted Subsidiary was an obligor or guarantor of the Indebtedness being extended, refinanced, renewed, replaced, defeased or refunded. Notwithstanding the preceding, any Indebtedness incurred under Credit Facilities pursuant to the covenant described under the caption *Certain Covenants Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock* shall be subject only to the refinancing provision in the definition of Credit Facilities and not pursuant to the requirements set forth in the definition of Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness.

*Person* means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization, limited liability company or government or other entity.

*Production Payments* means, collectively, Dollar-Denominated Production Payments and Volumetric Production Payments.



**Table of Contents**

*Rating Agency* means each of S&P and Moody's, or if S&P or Moody's or both shall not make a rating on the notes publicly available, a nationally recognized statistical rating agency or agencies, as the case may be, selected by the Company (as certified by a resolution of the Board of Directors) which shall be substituted for S&P or Moody's, or both, as the case may be.

*Rating Decline* means the occurrence of a decrease of one or more gradations (including gradations within rating categories as well as between rating categories) in the rating of either series of the notes by either Rating Agency.

*Reporting Failure* means the failure of the Company to file with the Commission and make available or otherwise deliver to the trustee and each Holder of Notes, within the time periods specified in Certain Covenants Reports (after giving effect to any grace period specified under Rule 12b-25 under the Exchange Act), the periodic reports, information, documents or other reports that the Company may be required to file with the Commission pursuant to such provision.

*Restricted Investment* means an Investment other than a Permitted Investment.

*Restricted Subsidiary* of a Person means any Subsidiary of the referent Person that is not an Unrestricted Subsidiary.

*S&P* refers to Standard & Poor's Ratings Services, a division of The McGraw Hill Companies, Inc., or any successor to the rating agency business thereof.

*Significant Subsidiary* means any Subsidiary that would be a significant subsidiary as defined in Article 1, Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X, promulgated pursuant to the Securities Act, as such Regulation is in effect on the Issue Date.

*Stated Maturity* means, with respect to any installment of interest or principal on any series of Indebtedness, the date on which the payment of interest or principal was scheduled to be paid in the original documentation governing such Indebtedness, and will not include any contingent obligations to repay, redeem or repurchase any such interest or principal prior to the date originally scheduled for the payment thereof.

*Subsidiary* means, with respect to any specified Person:

- (1) any corporation, association or other business entity (other than a partnership) of which more than 50% of the total voting power of Voting Stock is at the time owned or controlled, directly or through another Subsidiary, by that Person or one or more of the other Subsidiaries of that Person (or a combination thereof); and
- (2) any partnership (a) the sole general partner or the managing general partner of which is such Person or a Subsidiary of such Person or (b) the only general partners of which are that Person or one or more Subsidiaries of that Person (or any combination thereof), but only if such Person and its Subsidiaries are entitled to receive more than 20% of the assets of such partnership upon its dissolution.

*Subsidiary Guarantee* means any guarantee by a Guarantor of the Company's payment Obligations under the indenture and on the notes.

*Unrestricted Subsidiary* means any Subsidiary of the Company (other than Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation) that is designated by the Board of Directors as an Unrestricted Subsidiary pursuant to a Board Resolution, but only to the

extent that such Subsidiary:

- (1) has no Indebtedness other than Non-Recourse Debt;
- (2) is not party to any agreement, contract, arrangement or understanding with the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company unless the terms of any such agreement, contract, arrangement

S-76

---

**Table of Contents**

or understanding are no less favorable to the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary than those that might be obtained at the time from Persons who are not Affiliates of the Company;

- (3) is a Person with respect to which neither the Company nor any of its Restricted Subsidiaries has any direct or indirect obligation (a) to subscribe for additional Equity Interests or (b) to maintain or preserve such Person's financial condition or to cause such Person to achieve any specified levels of operating results; and
- (4) has not guaranteed or otherwise directly or indirectly provided credit support for any Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries.

Any designation of a Subsidiary of the Company as an Unrestricted Subsidiary will be evidenced to the trustee by filing with the trustee the Board Resolution giving effect to such designation and an officers' certificate certifying that such designation complied with the preceding conditions and was permitted by the covenant described above under the caption Certain Covenants Restricted Payments. If, at any time, any Unrestricted Subsidiary would fail to meet the preceding requirements as an Unrestricted Subsidiary, it will thereafter cease to be an Unrestricted Subsidiary for purposes of the indenture and any Indebtedness of such Subsidiary will be deemed to be incurred by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company as of such date and, if such Indebtedness is not permitted to be incurred as of such date under the covenant described under the caption Certain Covenants Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock, the Company will be in default of such covenant.

*Volumetric Production Payments* means production payment obligations recorded as deferred revenue in accordance with GAAP, together with all related undertakings and obligations.

*Voting Stock* of any Person as of any date means the Capital Stock of such Person that is at the time entitled (without regard to the occurrence of any contingency) to vote in the election of the Board of Directors of such Person.

*Weighted Average Life to Maturity* means, when applied to any Indebtedness at any date, the number of years obtained by dividing:

- (1) the sum of the products obtained by multiplying (a) the amount of each then remaining installment, sinking fund, serial maturity or other required payments of principal, including payment at final maturity, in respect of the Indebtedness, by (b) the number of years (calculated to the nearest one-twelfth) that will elapse between such date and the making of such payment; by
- (2) the then outstanding principal amount of such Indebtedness.

---

**Table of Contents****MATERIAL U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES**

The following discussion is a summary of the material U.S. federal income tax (and, in the case of certain foreign individuals, estate tax) consequences relevant to the acquisition, ownership, and disposition of the notes by U.S. Holders and by Non-U.S. Holders (each as defined below). This summary is based upon the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the Code), Treasury regulations, rulings of the Internal Revenue Service (the IRS), and judicial decisions in existence on the date hereof, all of which are subject to change or different interpretations. Any such change could apply retroactively and could affect adversely the tax consequences described below. No assurance can be given that the IRS will agree with the views expressed in this summary, or that a court will not sustain any challenge by the IRS in the event of litigation. No advance tax ruling has been sought or obtained from the IRS regarding the tax consequences of the transactions described herein.

For purposes of this summary, a U.S. Holder is a beneficial owner of notes that is (a) an individual who is a citizen of the United States or who is resident in the United States for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (b) an entity that is classified for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a corporation and that is organized under the laws of the United States, any state thereof, or the District of Columbia, or is otherwise treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a domestic corporation, (c) an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source, or (d) a trust (i) whose administration is subject to the primary supervision of a court within the United States and all substantial decisions of which are subject to the control of one or more United States persons as described in Section 7701(a)(30) of the Code (United States persons), or (ii) that has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury regulations to be treated as a United States person.

For purposes of this summary, a Non-U.S. Holder is a beneficial owner of notes that is neither a U.S. Holder nor an entity that is classified for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a partnership or as a disregarded entity. If an entity classified for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a partnership or as a disregarded entity owns notes, the tax treatment of a member of the entity will depend on the status of the member and the activities of the entity. The tax treatment of such an entity, and the tax treatment of any member of such an entity, are not addressed in this summary. Any entity that is classified for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a partnership or as a disregarded entity and that owns notes, and any members of such an entity, should consult their tax advisors.

This summary does not discuss all U.S. federal income tax considerations that may be relevant to U.S. Holders and Non-U.S. Holders in light of their particular circumstances or that may be relevant to certain beneficial owners that may be subject to special treatment under U.S. federal income tax law (for example, tax-exempt organizations, insurance companies, banks and other financial institutions, dealers in securities, traders in securities that elect to use a mark-to-market method of accounting, real estate investment trusts, regulated investment companies, individual retirement accounts, qualified pension plans, persons who hold notes as part of a straddle, hedging, constructive sale, conversion, or other integrated transaction, persons that purchase or sell notes as part of a wash sale for tax purposes, U.S. Holders whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar, controlled foreign corporations, passive foreign investment companies, and corporations that accumulate earnings to avoid U.S. federal income tax). Furthermore, this summary does not discuss any alternative minimum tax consequences, and does not address any aspects of state, local, or foreign taxation. This summary only applies to those beneficial owners that purchase notes in the initial offering at the initial offering price and that hold notes as capital assets within the meaning of Section 1221 of the Code. In the case of any Non-U.S. Holder who is an individual, this summary assumes that this individual was not formerly a United States citizen, and was not formerly a resident of the United States for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

Treasury regulations provide special rules for the treatment of debt instruments that provide for contingent payments. Under these regulations, a contingency is disregarded if the contingency is remote or incidental, or, in certain circumstances, it is significantly more likely than not that such contingency will not occur. We intend to take the

position that the contingencies on the notes (for example, your right to require us to purchase the notes upon a Change of Control, as described under Description of the Notes Repurchase at the Option of Holders

S-78

## **Table of Contents**

Change of Control ) will not cause the contingent payment debt instrument rules of the Treasury regulations to apply. A successful challenge of this position by the IRS could affect the timing and amount of income inclusions with respect to the notes, and could also cause any gain from the sale or other disposition of a note to be treated as ordinary income rather than as capital gain. Beneficial owners of the notes should consult their tax advisors regarding the possible application of the contingent payment debt instrument rules to the notes. The remainder of this summary assumes that the notes will not be considered to be contingent payment debt instruments.

**THIS SUMMARY IS INCLUDED FOR GENERAL INFORMATION ONLY AND MAY NOT BE APPLICABLE DEPENDING UPON THE PARTICULAR SITUATION OF A BENEFICIAL OWNER OF NOTES. BENEFICIAL OWNERS ARE ENCOURAGED TO SEEK ADVICE BASED ON THEIR PARTICULAR CIRCUMSTANCES FROM AN INDEPENDENT TAX ADVISOR.**

## **U.S. Holders**

### ***Interest***

Interest on the notes generally will be taxable to a U.S. Holder as ordinary interest income (in accordance with the U.S. Holder's regular method of tax accounting) at the time such income is accrued or received.

### ***Sale or other taxable disposition of notes***

In the case of a sale, redemption, retirement, or other taxable disposition of a note, a U.S. Holder generally will recognize capital gain or loss in an amount equal to the difference between the amount realized on the taxable disposition, other than amounts attributable to accrued but unpaid interest on the notes (which will be treated as a payment of interest), and the U.S. Holder's tax basis in such notes. A U.S. Holder's tax basis in a note generally will be equal to the cost of the note to such U.S. Holder. Any such capital gain or loss generally will be long-term capital gain or loss if the U.S. Holder's holding period for the notes is more than one year at the time of disposition. A long-term capital gain recognized by an individual upon a taxable disposition of a note is generally eligible for reduced rates of U.S. federal income taxation. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to certain limitations.

### ***Unearned Income Medicare Contribution Tax***

A 3.8% Medicare contribution tax will be imposed on the net investment income of certain United States individuals and on the undistributed net investment income of certain estates and trusts (subject to certain thresholds). Among other items, net investment income generally includes interest and certain net gain from the disposition of property (such as the notes), less certain deductions.

### ***Backup withholding and information reporting***

In general, information returns will be filed with the IRS in connection with payments on the notes and the proceeds from a sale or other disposition of the notes. A U.S. Holder will be subject to backup withholding on these payments if the U.S. Holder fails to provide its taxpayer identification number in the manner required by applicable law, fails to certify that it is not subject to the backup withholding tax, or otherwise fails to comply with applicable backup withholding tax rules.

Any amounts withheld from a U.S. Holder under the backup withholding provisions may be credited against the U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, of the U.S. Holder, and may entitle the U.S. Holder to a refund, provided that the required information is timely furnished to the IRS.

S-79

---

**Table of Contents**

**Non-U.S. Holders**

***Interest***

Interest earned on a note by a Non-U.S. Holder will be considered portfolio interest, and will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax or withholding, if:

the Non-U.S. Holder is neither (i) a controlled foreign corporation that is related to us as described in Section 881(c)(3)(C) of the Code, (ii) a bank receiving the interest on a loan made in the ordinary course of its business, nor (iii) a person who owns, directly or under the attribution rules of Section 871(h)(3)(C) of the Code, 10% or more of the total combined voting power of all classes of our stock entitled to vote;

the certification requirements described below are satisfied; and

the interest is not effectively connected with the conduct of a trade or business within the United States by the Non-U.S. Holder.

In general, the certification requirements will be satisfied if either (i) the beneficial owner of the note provides, to the person that otherwise would be required to withhold U.S. tax, a properly completed IRS Form W-8BEN (or a suitable substitute form) that includes the beneficial owner's name and address and that certifies, under penalties of perjury, that the beneficial owner is not a United States person, or (ii) a securities clearing organization, bank, or other financial institution which holds customers' securities in the ordinary course of its trade or business holds the note on behalf of a beneficial owner and provides to the person that otherwise would be required to withhold U.S. tax, a statement certifying under penalties of perjury that an applicable IRS Form W-8BEN (or a suitable substitute form) has been received by it from the beneficial owner, or from another financial institution acting on behalf of the beneficial owner, and furnishes a copy to the person that otherwise would be required to withhold U.S. tax. These certification requirements may be satisfied with other documentary evidence in the case of a note held through a qualified intermediary.

Any payments to a Non-U.S. Holder of interest that do not qualify for the portfolio interest exemption and that are not effectively connected with the conduct of a trade or business (or, if a United States income tax treaty applies, are not attributable to a permanent establishment maintained) within the United States by the Non-U.S. Holder will be subject to U.S. federal income tax and withholding at a rate of 30% (or at a lower rate under an applicable income tax treaty). To claim a reduction or exemption under an applicable income tax treaty, a Non-U.S. Holder must generally submit, to the person that otherwise would be required to withhold U.S. tax, a properly completed IRS Form W-8BEN (or a suitable substitute form).

Any interest earned on a note that is effectively connected with the conduct of a trade or business (and, if a United States income tax treaty applies, is attributable to a permanent establishment maintained) within the United States by a Non-U.S. Holder will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at regular graduated rates. If the Non-U.S. Holder is classified as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, such income will also be taken into account for purposes of determining the amount of U.S. branch profits tax, which is imposed at a rate of 30% (or at a lower rate under an applicable income tax treaty) on effectively connected earnings and profits, subject to certain adjustments. However, such effectively connected income will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax withholding, provided that the Non-U.S. Holder furnishes a properly completed IRS Form W-8ECI (or a suitable substitute form) to the person



that otherwise would be required to withhold U.S. tax.

S-80

## **Table of Contents**

### ***Sale or other taxable disposition of notes***

Subject to the discussion below regarding information reporting and backup withholding, any gain recognized by a Non-U.S. Holder upon a sale, redemption, retirement, or other taxable disposition of notes will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax unless:

the gain is effectively connected with the conduct of a trade or business (and, if an applicable United States income tax treaty applies, is attributable to a permanent establishment maintained) within the United States by the Non-U.S. Holder; or

in the case of an individual, such individual is present in the United States for 183 days or more during the taxable year in which the gain is realized and certain other conditions are met.

In the case of a Non-U.S. Holder whose gain is described in the first bullet point above, any such gain will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at regular graduated rates, and (if the Non-U.S. Holder is classified as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes) may also be subject to a U.S. branch profits tax, which is imposed at a rate of 30% (or at a lower rate under an applicable income tax treaty) on effectively connected earnings and profits, subject to certain adjustments.

An individual Non-U.S. Holder described in the second bullet point above will be subject to a flat 30% tax on such gain, which may be offset by U.S. source capital losses even though the individual is not considered a resident of the United States.

### ***Backup withholding and information reporting***

The amount of any interest paid to a Non-U.S. Holder with respect to notes and the amount of any tax withheld, generally must be reported to the IRS and to the Non-U.S. Holder, regardless of whether withholding was required. Copies of the information returns reporting such interest and withholding may also be made available under the provisions of an applicable income tax treaty or agreement to the tax authorities in the country in which the Non-U.S. Holder resides.

Any interest paid to a Non-U.S. Holder with respect to notes generally will not be subject to backup withholding, provided that the Non-U.S. Holder certifies, under penalties of perjury, on IRS Form W-8BEN or W-8ECI (or a suitable substitute form) that it is not a United States person and certain other conditions are met, or the Non-U.S. Holder otherwise establishes an exemption.

The payment to a Non-U.S. Holder of the proceeds of a disposition of a note by or through the U.S. office of a broker generally will not be subject to information reporting or backup withholding if the Non-U.S. Holder either certifies, under penalties of perjury, on IRS Form W-8BEN or W-8ECI (or a suitable substitute form) that it is not a United States person and certain other conditions are met, or the Non-U.S. Holder otherwise establishes an exemption. Information reporting and backup withholding generally will not apply to the payment of the proceeds of a disposition of a note by or through the foreign office of a foreign broker (as defined in applicable Treasury regulations). Information reporting requirements (but not backup withholding) will apply, however, to a payment of the proceeds of the disposition of a note by or through a foreign office of a U.S. broker or of a foreign broker with certain relationships to the United States, unless the broker has documentary evidence in its records that the holder is not a United States person and certain other conditions are met, or the holder otherwise establishes an exemption.

Any amounts withheld from a Non-U.S. Holder under the backup withholding provisions may be credited against the U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, of the Non-U.S. Holder, and may entitle the Non-U.S. Holder to a refund, provided that the required information is timely furnished to the IRS.

S-81

**Table of Contents**

*Estate tax consequences*

Any note that is owned (or treated as owned) by an individual who is not a citizen or resident (as specially defined for U.S. federal estate tax purposes) of the United States at the date of death will not be included in such individual's estate for U.S. federal estate tax purposes, unless the individual owns, directly or indirectly, 10% or more of the voting power of all our stock, or, at the time of such individual's death, payments in respect of the notes would have been effectively connected with the conduct by such individual of a trade or business in the United States.

S-82

**Table of Contents****UNDERWRITING (Conflicts of Interest)**

We are offering the notes described in this prospectus supplement through a number of underwriters. We have entered into an underwriting agreement with the underwriters for whom Wells Fargo Securities, LLC is acting as representative. Subject to the terms of the underwriting agreement, we have agreed to sell to the underwriters, and each underwriter has severally and not jointly agreed to purchase, at the aggregate principal amount less the underwriters' discounts and commissions, the aggregate principal amount of the notes listed next to its name in the following table:

| <b>Underwriter</b>                                    | <b>Principal<br/>Amount of<br/>2019<br/>Notes</b> | <b>Principal<br/>Amount of<br/>2021<br/>Notes</b> |
|---|---|---|
| Wells Fargo Securities, LLC                           | \$  | \$  |
| J.P. Morgan Securities LLC                            |   |   |
| Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith<br>Incorporated |   |   |
| BBVA Securities Inc.                                  |   |   |
| SunTrust Robinson Humphrey, Inc.                      |   |   |
| U.S. Bancorp Investments, Inc.                        |   |   |
| Capital One Securities, Inc.                          |   |   |
| CIBC World Markets Corp.                              |   |   |
| RBC Capital Markets, LLC                              |   |   |
| Mitsubishi UFJ Securities (USA), Inc.                 |   |   |
| KeyBanc Capital Markets Inc.                          |   |   |
| RB International Markets (USA) LLC                    |   |   |
| Scotia Capital (USA) Inc.                             |   |   |
| Santander Investment Securities Inc.                  |   |   |
| Barclays Capital Inc.                                 |   |   |
| BOSC, Inc.  |   |   |
| Comerica Securities, Inc.                             |   |   |
| Fifth Third Securities, Inc.                          |   |   |
| Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC                              |   |   |
| Raymond James & Associates, Inc.                      |   |   |
| <b>Total</b>  | <b>\$</b>   | <b>\$</b>   |

The underwriters are committed to take and pay for all of the notes being offered, if any are taken.

The underwriting agreement also provides that if an underwriter defaults, the purchase commitments of non-defaulting underwriters may also be increased or the offering may be terminated.

The underwriters initially propose to offer the notes to the public at the public offering price that appears on the cover page of this prospectus supplement. The underwriters may offer the notes to selected dealers at the public offering price minus a concession of up to \_\_\_\_\_ of the principal amount. In addition, the underwriters may allow, and

those selected dealers may reallocate, a concession of up to \_\_\_\_\_ of the principal amount to certain other dealers. After the initial offering, the underwriters may change the public offering price and any other selling terms. The underwriters may offer and sell notes through certain of their affiliates.

Our expenses of this offering, not including the underwriting discount, are estimated at \$3.5 million and are payable by us.

We have agreed that we will not, directly or indirectly offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase or

## **Table of Contents**

otherwise transfer or dispose of any of our debt securities or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for our debt securities or file a registration statement with respect to any of the foregoing, without the prior written consent of Wells Fargo Securities, LLC for a period of 90 days after the date of this prospectus supplement.

In connection with the offering, the underwriters may purchase and sell notes in the open market. These transactions may include short sales, stabilizing transactions and purchases to cover positions created by short sales. Short sales involve the sale by the underwriters of a greater number of notes than they are required to purchase in the offering. Stabilizing transactions consist of certain bids or purchases made for the purpose of preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of the notes while the offering is in progress.

The underwriters also may impose a penalty bid. This occurs when a particular underwriter repays to the underwriters a portion of the discount received by it because Wells Fargo Securities, LLC or its affiliates have repurchased notes sold by or for the account of such underwriter in stabilizing or short covering transactions.

These activities by the underwriters, as well as other purchases by the underwriters for their own accounts, may stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the market price of the notes. As a result, the price of the notes may be higher than the price that otherwise might exist in the open market. If these activities are commenced, they may be discontinued by the underwriters at any time. These transactions may be effected in the over-the-counter market or otherwise. We have agreed that we will indemnify the underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or contribute to payments that the underwriters may be required to make in respect of those liabilities.

Each series of notes is a new issue of securities with no established trading market. We do not intend to apply for the notes to be listed on any securities exchange or to arrange for the notes to be quoted on any quotation system. The underwriters have advised us that they intend to make a market in the notes, but they are not obligated to do so. The underwriters may discontinue any market-making in the notes at any time in their sole discretion without notice. Accordingly, we cannot assure you that a liquid trading market will develop for the notes. If an active trading market for the notes does not develop, the market price and liquidity of the notes may be adversely affected. If the notes are traded, they may trade at a discount from their initial offering price, depending on prevailing interest rates, the market for similar securities, our performance and other factors.

## **Conflicts of Interest**

All of the underwriters or their affiliates have performed commercial banking, investment banking or advisory services for us from time to time for which they have received customary fees and reimbursement of expenses. The underwriters may, from time to time, engage in transactions with and perform services for us in the ordinary course of their business for which they may receive customary fees and reimbursement of expenses. In addition, affiliates of each of the underwriters is a lender, and in some cases agents or managers for the lenders, under our credit facility. If any of the underwriters or their affiliates has a lending relationship with us, certain of those underwriters or their affiliates routinely hedge, and certain other of those underwriters or their affiliates may hedge, their credit exposure to us consistent with their customary risk management policies. Typically, these underwriters and their affiliates would hedge such exposure by entering into transactions that consist of either the purchase of credit default swaps or the creation of short positions in our securities, including potentially the notes offered hereby. Any such credit default swaps or short positions could adversely affect future trading prices of the notes offered hereby.

As of June 30, 2013, on a pro forma basis giving effect to the sale of the Postle properties, which closed on July 15, 2013, there was \$899.0 million outstanding under Whiting Oil and Gas Corporation's credit facility and \$2.4 million of

letters of credit outstanding under such credit facility. A portion of the net proceeds of this offering will be used to repay revolving loans borrowed under such credit facility. Affiliates of each of the underwriters will receive their pro rata share of such repayment. In addition, certain of the underwriters or their

S-84



## **Table of Contents**

affiliates are holders of our outstanding 7.0% Senior Subordinated Notes due February 1, 2014 and, accordingly, may receive a portion of the net proceeds of the offering in connection with our retirement of such notes. See Use of Proceeds.

Because more than five percent of the net proceeds, not including underwriting compensation, is expected to be paid to affiliates of members of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. participating in the offering, the offering will be conducted in accordance with FINRA Rule 5121. Pursuant to such rule, Raymond James & Associates, Inc. acted as the qualified independent underwriter in pricing this offering and conducting due diligence. We have agreed to indemnify Raymond James & Associates, Inc. against liabilities incurred in connection with acting as a qualified independent underwriter, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

In addition, from time to time, certain of the underwriters and their affiliates may effect transactions for their own account or the accounts of their customers, and hold on behalf of themselves or their customers, long or short positions in our debt or equity securities or loans, and may do so in the future. Furthermore, affiliates of certain of the underwriters are significant counterparties to certain of our hedging instruments.

## **Sales Outside the United States**

No action has been taken in any jurisdiction (except in the United States) that would permit a public offering of the securities, or the possession, circulation or distribution of this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus or any other material relating to us or the securities in any jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required. Accordingly, the securities may not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, and none of this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus or any other offering material or advertisements in connection with the securities may be distributed or published, in or from any country or jurisdiction except in compliance with any applicable rules and regulations of any such country or jurisdiction.

Each of the underwriters may arrange to sell securities offered hereby in certain jurisdictions outside the United States, either directly or through affiliates, where they are permitted to do so. In that regard, Wells Fargo Securities, LLC may arrange to sell securities in certain jurisdictions through an affiliate, Wells Fargo Securities International Limited, or WFSIL. WFSIL is a wholly-owned indirect subsidiary of Wells Fargo & Company and an affiliate of Wells Fargo Securities, LLC. WFSIL is a U.K. incorporated investment firm regulated by the Financial Conduct Authority. Wells Fargo Securities is the trade name for certain corporate and investment banking services of Wells Fargo & Company and its affiliates, including Wells Fargo Securities, LLC and WFSIL.

## **Notice to Prospective Investors in the European Economic Area**

In relation to each member state of the European Economic Area that has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a relevant member state) with effect from and including the date on which the Prospectus Directive is implemented in that relevant member state (the relevant implementation date), an offer of securities described in this prospectus may not be made to the public in that relevant member state other than:

to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;

to fewer than 100 or, if the relevant member state has implemented the relevant provision of the 2010 PD Amending Directive, 150, natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the

Prospectus Directive), as permitted under the Prospectus Directive, subject to obtaining the prior consent of the relevant dealer or dealers nominated by the issuer for any such offer; or

in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive; provided that no such offer of securities shall require us or any underwriter to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive.

S-85

## **Table of Contents**

For purposes of this provision, the expression an offer of securities to the public in any relevant member state means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the securities to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe for the securities, as the expression may be varied in that member state by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that member state, and the expression Prospectus Directive means Directive 2003/71/EC (and amendments thereto, including the 2010 PD Amending Directive, to the extent implemented in the relevant member state), and includes any relevant implementing measure in each relevant member state. The expression 2010 PD Amending Directive means Directive 2010/73/EU.

### **United Kingdom**

This prospectus supplement and any other material in relation to the notes described herein is only being distributed to, and is only directed at, persons in the United Kingdom that are qualified investors within the meaning of Article 2(1)(e) of the Prospective Directive ( qualified investors ) that also (i) have professional experience in matters relating to investments falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005, as amended, or the Order, (ii) who fall within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order or (iii) to whom it may otherwise lawfully be communicated (all such persons together being referred to as relevant persons ). The notes are only available to, and any invitation, offer or agreement to purchase or otherwise acquire such notes will be engaged in only with, relevant persons. This prospectus supplement and its contents are confidential and should not be distributed, published or reproduced (in whole or in part) or disclosed by recipients to any other person in the United Kingdom. Any person in the United Kingdom that is not a relevant person should not act or rely on this prospectus supplement or any of its contents.

The distribution of this prospectus supplement in the United Kingdom to anyone not falling within the above categories is not permitted and may contravene FSMA. No person falling outside those categories should treat this prospectus supplement as constituting a promotion to him, or act on it for any purposes whatever. Recipients of this prospectus supplement are advised that we, the underwriters and any other person that communicates this prospectus supplement are not, as a result solely of communicating this prospectus supplement, acting for or advising them and are not responsible for providing recipients of this prospectus supplement with the protections which would be given to those who are clients of any aforementioned entities that is subject to the Financial Services Authority Rules.

### **Switzerland**

This document as well as any other material relating to the notes of our notes which are the subject of the offering contemplated by this prospectus supplement do not constitute an issue prospectus supplement pursuant to Article 652a or Article 1156 of the Swiss Code of Obligations. Our notes will not be listed on the SWX Swiss Exchange and, therefore, the documents relating to our notes including, but not limited to, this document, do not claim to comply with the disclosure standards of the listing rules of SWX Swiss Exchange and corresponding prospectus schemes annexed to the listing rules of the SWX Swiss Exchange.

**Table of Contents**

Our notes are being offered in Switzerland by way of a private placement, i.e. to a small number of selected investors only, without any public offer and only to investors who do not purchase our notes with the intention to distribute them to the public. The investors will be individually approached by us from time to time.

This document as well as any other material relating to our notes is personal and confidential and does not constitute an offer to any other person. This document may only be used by those investors to whom it has been handed out in connection with the offering described herein and may neither directly nor indirectly be distributed or made available to other persons without our express consent. It may not be used in connection with any other offer and shall in particular not be copied and/or distributed to the public in (or from) Switzerland.

S-87

**Table of Contents**

**WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION**

We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. We also filed a registration statement on Form S-3, including exhibits, under the Securities Act of 1933 with respect to the notes offered by this prospectus supplement. This prospectus supplement is a part of the registration statement, but does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement or the exhibits. You may read and copy the registration statement and any other document that we file at the SEC's public reference room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington D.C. 20549. You can call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the operation of the public reference room. You can also find our public filings with the SEC on the internet at a web site maintained by the SEC located at <http://www.sec.gov>.

We are incorporating by reference specified documents that we file with the SEC, which means:

incorporated documents are considered part of this prospectus supplement;

we are disclosing important information to you by referring you to those documents; and

information we file with the SEC will automatically update and supersede information contained in this prospectus supplement.

We incorporate by reference the documents listed below and any future filings we make with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 after the date of this prospectus supplement and before the end of the offering of the securities pursuant to this prospectus supplement:

our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012;

our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the quarters ended March 31, 2013 and June 30, 2013;

our Current Reports on Form 8-K, dated January 7, 2013, May 7, 2013, June 17, 2013, June 17, 2013, June 22, 2013, June 28, 2013, July 15, 2013 and September 9, 2013; and

our definitive proxy statement on Schedule 14A filed on March 25, 2013.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, information furnished under Items 2.02 and 7.01 of any Current Report on Form 8-K, including the related exhibits under Item 9.01, is not incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement.

Information in this prospectus supplement supersedes related information in the documents listed above, and information in subsequently filed documents supersedes related information in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and the incorporated documents.

Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

You may request a copy of any of these filings, at no cost, by request directed to us at the following address or telephone number:

Whiting Petroleum Corporation

1700 Broadway, Suite 2300

Denver, Colorado 80290

(303) 837-1661

Attention: Corporate Secretary

You can also find these filings on our website at [www.whiting.com](http://www.whiting.com). However, we are not incorporating the information on our website other than these filings into this prospectus.

S-88

**Table of Contents**

**LEGAL MATTERS**

Certain legal matters relating to this offering will be passed upon for us by the law firm of Foley & Lardner LLP. Certain legal matters relating to this offering will be passed upon for the underwriters by the law firm of Vinson & Elkins L.L.P.

**EXPERTS**

The financial statements, and the related financial statement schedule, incorporated in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus by reference from Whiting Petroleum Corporation's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, and the effectiveness of Whiting Petroleum Corporation's internal control over financial reporting have been audited by Deloitte & Touche LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their reports, which are incorporated herein by reference. Such financial statements and financial statement schedule have been so incorporated in reliance upon the reports of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

Certain information with respect to our oil and natural gas reserves derived from the report of Cawley Gillespie & Associates, Inc., an independent petroleum engineering consultant, has been included in this prospectus supplement, and incorporated in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus by reference from Whiting Petroleum Corporation's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012, on the authority of said firm as an expert in petroleum engineering.

**Table of Contents**

Prospectus

# **Whiting Petroleum Corporation**

**Debt Securities**

**Common Stock**

**Preferred Stock**

**Depositary Shares**

**Warrants**

**Stock Purchase Contracts**

**Stock Purchase Units**

We may offer and sell from time to time our securities in one or more classes or series and in amounts, at prices and on terms that we will determine at the times of the offerings. Our subsidiaries may guarantee any debt securities that we issue under this prospectus. In addition, selling stockholders to be named in a prospectus supplement may offer and sell from time to time shares of our common stock in such amounts as set forth in a prospectus supplement. Unless otherwise set forth in a prospectus supplement, we will not receive any proceeds from the sale of shares of our common stock by any selling stockholders.

Each time securities are sold using this prospectus, we will provide a supplement to this prospectus and possibly other offering material containing specific information about the offering and the terms of the securities being sold, including the offering price. The supplements may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. You should read this prospectus and the prospectus supplement relating to the specific issue of securities carefully before you invest.

We may offer the securities independently or together in any combination for sale directly to purchasers or through underwriters, dealers or agents to be designated at a future date. The supplements to this prospectus will provide the specific terms of the plan of distribution.

Our common stock is listed on the New York Stock Exchange under the symbol WLL.

**Investment in our securities involves risks. See Risk Factors in our Annual Report on Form 10-K and in any applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material for a discussion of certain factors which should be considered in an investment of the securities which may be offered hereby.**



**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

The date of this prospectus is September 5, 2012

**Table of Contents****TABLE OF CONTENTS**

|   | <b>Page</b> |
|---|-------------|
| <u>About This Prospectus</u>  | 2           |
| <u>Forward-Looking Statements</u>                                       | 3           |
| <u>Whiting Petroleum Corporation</u>                                    | 3           |
| <u>Selling Stockholders</u>   | 3           |
| <u>Use of Proceeds</u>  | 4           |
| <u>Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges</u>                               | 4           |
| <u>Description of Debt Securities</u>                                   | 4           |
| <u>Description of Capital Stock</u>                                     | 18          |
| <u>Description of Depositary Shares</u>                                 | 21          |
| <u>Description of Warrants</u>  | 22          |
| <u>Description of Stock Purchase Contracts and Stock Purchase Units</u> | 23          |
| <u>Where You Can Find More Information</u>                              | 23          |
| <u>Plan of Distribution</u>   | 24          |
| <u>Legal Matters</u>  | 27          |
| <u>Experts</u>  | 27          |

**ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS**

Unless the context otherwise requires, in this prospectus, we, us, our or ours refer to Whiting Petroleum Corporation and its consolidated subsidiaries.

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, utilizing a shelf registration process. Under this shelf process, we may, from time to time, sell the securities or combinations of the securities described in this prospectus, and one or more of our stockholders may sell our common stock, in one or more offerings. This prospectus provides you with a general description of those securities. Each time we offer securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement and/or other offering material that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. The prospectus supplement and/or other offering material may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. You should read this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and any other offering material together with additional information described under the heading Where You Can Find More Information.

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. Incorporated by reference means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to another document filed separately with the SEC. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. We are not making offers to sell or solicitations to buy the securities in any jurisdiction in which an offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making that offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to anyone to whom it is unlawful to make an offer or solicitation. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement or any other offering material, or the information we previously filed with the SEC that we incorporate by reference in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or any other offering material, is accurate as of any date other than its respective date. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since those dates.

## **Table of Contents**

### **FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

This prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or any other offering material, and the information incorporated by reference in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or any other offering material, contain forward-looking statements intended to qualify for the safe harbor from liability established by the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Forward-looking statements include information concerning possible or assumed future risks and may be preceded by or include forward-looking words such as expects, intends, plans, estimates, anticipates, believes, should, projects or the negative thereof or variations thereon or similar terminology. All statements other than statements of historical facts included in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, including, without limitation, statements regarding our future financial position, business strategy, projected revenues, earnings, costs, capital expenditures and debt levels, and plans and objectives of management for future operations, are forward-looking statements. We caution that these statements and any other forward-looking statements in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or any other offering material, and the information incorporated by reference in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, only reflect our expectations and are not guarantees of performance. These statements involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions, including, among others, those we identify under Risk Factors in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and other documents that we file from time to time with the SEC that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Numerous important factors described in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, and the information incorporated by reference in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, could affect these statements and could cause actual results to differ materially from our expectations. We assume no obligation, and disclaim any duty, to update or revise publicly any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise.

### **WHITING PETROLEUM CORPORATION**

We are an independent oil and gas company engaged in exploration, development, acquisition and production activities primarily in the Rocky Mountains, Permian Basin, Mid-Continent, Michigan and Gulf Coast regions of the United States. Since our inception in 1980, we have built a strong asset base and achieved steady growth through property acquisitions, development and exploration activities.

Our principal executive offices are located at 1700 Broadway, Suite 2300, Denver, Colorado 80290-2300, and our telephone number is (303) 837-1661.

### **SELLING STOCKHOLDERS**

We may register shares of common stock covered by this prospectus for re-offers and resales by any selling stockholders to be named in a prospectus supplement. Because we are a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act of 1933, we may add secondary sales of shares of our common stock by any selling stockholders by filing a prospectus supplement with the SEC. We may register these shares to permit selling stockholders to resell their shares when they deem appropriate. A selling stockholder may resell all, a portion or none of such stockholder's shares at any time and from time to time. Selling stockholders may also sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of some or all of their shares of our common stock in transactions exempt from the registration requirements of the Securities Act. We do not know when or in what amounts the selling stockholders may offer shares for sale under this prospectus and any prospectus supplement. We may pay all expenses incurred with respect to the registration of the shares of common stock owned by the selling stockholders, other than underwriting fees, discounts or commissions, which will be borne by the selling stockholders. We will provide you with a prospectus supplement naming the selling stockholder, the amount of shares to be registered and sold and any other terms of the shares of common stock being sold by a selling stockholder.

**Table of Contents****USE OF PROCEEDS**

We intend to use the net proceeds from the sales of the securities as set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material.

**RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES**

The following table presents our ratios of consolidated earnings to fixed charges and our ratios of consolidated earnings to fixed charges and preferred stock dividends for the periods presented.

|   | Six Months Ended |        | Year Ended December 31, |      |       |       |
|---|------------------|--------|-------------------------|------|-------|-------|
|   | June, 2012       | 2011   | 2010                    | 2009 | 2008  | 2007  |
| Ratio of earnings to fixed charges (1)(2)                               | 11.40x           | 12.63x | 9.61x                   |      | 6.92x | 3.65x |
| Ratio of earnings to fixed charges and preferred stock dividends (1)(2) | 11.15x           | 12.31x | 6.75x                   |      | 6.92x | 3.65x |

- (1) For purposes of calculating the ratios above, earnings consist of income (loss) before income taxes and before income or loss from equity investees, plus fixed charges and amortization of capitalized interest and distributed income of equity investees, less capitalized interest. Fixed charges consist of interest expensed, interest capitalized, amortized premiums, discounts and capitalized expenses related to indebtedness and an estimate of interest within rental expense.
- (2) For the year ended December 31, 2009, earnings were inadequate to cover fixed charges, and the ratios of earnings to fixed charges and earnings to fixed charges and preferred stock dividends therefore have not been presented for that period. The coverage deficiency necessary for the ratio of earnings to fixed charges to equal 1.00x (one-to-one coverage) was \$165.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2009 and the deficiency necessary for the ratio of earnings to fixed charges and preferred stock dividends to equal 1.00x (one-to-one coverage) was \$181.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2009.

**DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES**

This section describes the general terms and provisions of the debt securities that we may issue separately, upon exercise of a debt warrant, in connection with a stock purchase contract or as part of a stock purchase unit from time to time in the form of one or more series of debt securities. The applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material will describe the specific terms of the debt securities offered through that prospectus supplement and/or other offering material as well as any general terms described in this section that will not apply to those debt securities.

Any debt securities issued using this prospectus ( Debt Securities ) will be our direct unsecured general obligations. The Debt Securities will be either our senior debt securities ( Senior Debt Securities ) or our subordinated debt securities ( Subordinated Debt Securities ). The Subordinated Debt Securities will be issued under the Subordinated Indenture, dated as of April 19, 2005, among us, certain of our subsidiaries and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as trustee ( Subordinated Indenture ). The Senior Debt Securities will be issued under a Senior Indenture among us, certain of our subsidiaries, if such subsidiaries are guarantors of the Senior Debt Securities, and a U.S. banking institution named as trustee in a prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. Together, the Senior Indenture and the Subordinated Indenture are called Indentures.

We are a holding company, and we primarily conduct our operations through subsidiaries. Unless the Debt Securities are guaranteed by our subsidiaries as described below, the rights of our company and our creditors, including holders of the Debt Securities, to participate in the assets of any subsidiary upon the latter's liquidation or reorganization, will be subject to the prior claims of the subsidiary's creditors, except to the extent that we may ourselves be a creditor with recognized claims against such subsidiary.

## **Table of Contents**

We have summarized selected provisions of the Indentures below. The summary is not complete. Each Indenture has been filed with the SEC as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and you should read the Indentures for provisions that may be important to you. In the summary below we have included references to article or section numbers of the applicable Indenture so that you can easily locate these provisions. Whenever we refer in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and/or other offering material to particular articles or sections or defined terms of the Indentures, those article or sections or defined terms are incorporated by reference herein or therein, as applicable. Capitalized terms used in the summary have the meanings specified in the Indentures.

### **General**

The Indentures provide that Debt Securities in separate series may be issued thereunder from time to time without limitation as to aggregate principal amount. We may specify a maximum aggregate principal amount for the Debt Securities of any series (Section 301). We will determine the terms and conditions of the Debt Securities, including the maturity, principal and interest, but those terms must be consistent with the Indenture. We have the right to reopen a previous issue of a series of debt by issuing additional Debt Securities of such series.

The Senior Debt Securities will rank equally with all of our other senior unsecured and unsubordinated debt ( Senior Debt ). The Subordinated Debt Securities will be subordinated in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of our Senior Debt (as defined) as described under Subordination of Subordinated Debt Securities and in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material applicable to any Subordinated Debt Securities.

If specified in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, certain of our domestic subsidiaries (the Subsidiary Guarantors ) will fully and unconditionally guarantee (the Subsidiary Guarantees ) on a joint and several basis the Debt Securities as described under Subsidiary Guarantees and in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. The Subsidiary Guarantees will be unsecured obligations of each Subsidiary Guarantor. Subsidiary Guarantees of Subordinated Debt Securities will be subordinated to the Senior Debt of the Subsidiary Guarantors on the same basis as the Subordinated Debt Securities are subordinated to our Senior Debt (Article Fourteen of the Subordinated Indenture).

The applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material will set forth the price or prices at which the Debt Securities to be offered will be issued and will describe the following terms of such Debt Securities:

- (1) the title of the Debt Securities;
- (2) whether the Debt Securities are Senior Debt Securities or Subordinated Debt Securities and, if Subordinated Debt Securities, the related subordination terms;
- (3) whether any of the Subsidiary Guarantors will provide Subsidiary Guarantees of the Debt Securities;
- (4) any limit on the aggregate principal amount of the Debt Securities;
- (5) the dates on which the principal of the Debt Securities will be payable;
- (6) the interest rate that the Debt Securities will bear and the interest payment dates for the Debt Securities;
- (7) the places where payments on the Debt Securities will be payable;

Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

- (8) any terms upon which the Debt Securities may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at our option;
- (9) any sinking fund or other provisions that would obligate us to repurchase or otherwise redeem the Debt Securities;

- 5 -

**Table of Contents**

- (10) the portion of the principal amount, if less than all, of the Debt Securities that will be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity of the Debt Securities;
  
- (11) whether the Debt Securities are defeasible;
  
- (12) any addition to or change in the Events of Default;
  
- (13) whether the Debt Securities are convertible into our common stock and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which conversion will be effected, including the initial conversion price or conversion rate and any adjustments thereto and the conversion period;
  
- (14) if convertible into our common stock or any of our other securities, the terms on which such Debt Securities are convertible;
  
- (15) any addition to or change in the covenants in the Indenture applicable to the Debt Securities; and
  
- (16) any other terms of the Debt Securities not inconsistent with the provisions of the Indenture (Section 301).

The Indentures do not limit the amount of Debt Securities that may be issued. Each Indenture allows Debt Securities to be issued up to the principal amount that may be authorized by our company and may be in any currency or currency unit designated by us.

Debt Securities, including Original Issue Discount Securities, may be sold at a substantial discount below their principal amount. Special United States federal income tax considerations applicable to Debt Securities sold at an original issue discount may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. In addition, special United States federal income tax or other considerations applicable to any Debt Securities that are denominated in a currency or currency unit other than United States dollars may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material.

**Senior Debt Securities**

The Senior Debt Securities will be unsecured senior obligations and will rank equally with all other senior unsecured and unsubordinated debt. The Senior Debt Securities will, however, be subordinated in right of payment to all our secured indebtedness to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. Except as provided in the applicable Senior Indenture or specified in any authorizing resolution or supplemental indenture relating to a series of Senior Debt Securities to be issued, no Senior Indenture will limit the amount of additional indebtedness that may rank equally with the Senior Debt Securities or the amount of indebtedness, secured or otherwise, that may be incurred or preferred stock that may be issued by any of our subsidiaries.

**Subordination of Subordinated Debt Securities**

The indebtedness evidenced by the Subordinated Debt Securities will, to the extent set forth in the Subordinated Indenture with respect to each series of Subordinated Debt Securities, be subordinate in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of our Senior Debt, including the Senior Debt Securities, and it may also be senior in right of payment to all of our Subordinated Debt (Article Twelve of the Subordinated Indenture). The prospectus supplement and/or other offering material relating to any Subordinated Debt Securities will summarize the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture applicable to that series including:

the applicability and effect of such provisions upon any payment or distribution respecting that series following any liquidation, dissolution or other winding-up, or any assignment for the benefit of creditors or other marshaling of assets or any bankruptcy, insolvency or similar proceedings;

Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

the applicability and effect of such provisions in the event of specified defaults with respect to any Senior Debt, including the circumstances under which and the periods in which we will be prohibited from making payments on the Subordinated Debt Securities; and

- 6 -



---

## **Table of Contents**

the definition of Senior Debt applicable to the Subordinated Debt Securities of that series and, if the series is issued on a senior subordinated basis, the definition of Subordinated Debt applicable to that series.

The prospectus supplement and/or other offering material will also describe as of a recent date the approximate amount of Senior Debt to which the Subordinated Debt Securities of that series will be subordinated.

The failure to make any payment on any of the Subordinated Debt Securities by reason of the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture described in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material will not be construed as preventing the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Subordinated Debt Securities arising from any such failure to make payment.

The subordination provisions described above will not be applicable to payments in respect of the Subordinated Debt Securities from a defeasance trust established in connection with any legal defeasance or covenant defeasance of the Subordinated Debt Securities as described under Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance.

### **Subsidiary Guarantees**

If specified in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, the Subsidiary Guarantors will guarantee the Debt Securities of a series. Unless otherwise indicated in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, the following provisions will apply to the Subsidiary Guarantees of the Subsidiary Guarantors.

Subject to the limitations described below and in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, the Subsidiary Guarantors will, jointly and severally, fully and unconditionally guarantee the prompt payment when due, whether at Stated Maturity, by acceleration or otherwise, of all our payment obligations under the Indentures and the Debt Securities of a series, whether for principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the Debt Securities or otherwise (all such obligations guaranteed by a Subsidiary Guarantor being herein called the Guaranteed Obligations ). The Subsidiary Guarantors will also pay all expenses (including reasonable counsel fees and expenses) incurred by the applicable Trustee in enforcing any rights under a Subsidiary Guarantee with respect to a Subsidiary Guarantor (Section 607).

In the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, a Subsidiary Guarantor's Subsidiary Guarantee will be subordinated in right of payment to the Senior Debt of such Subsidiary Guarantor on the same basis as the Subordinated Debt Securities are subordinated to our Senior Debt. No payment will be made by any Subsidiary Guarantor under its Subsidiary Guarantee during any period in which payments by us on the Subordinated Debt Securities are suspended by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture (Article Fourteen of the Subordinated Indenture).

Each Subsidiary Guarantee will be limited in amount to an amount not to exceed the maximum amount that can be guaranteed by the relevant Subsidiary Guarantor without rendering such Subsidiary Guarantee voidable under applicable law relating to fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer or similar laws affecting the rights of creditors generally (Section 1306).

Each Subsidiary Guarantee will be a continuing guarantee and will:

- (1) remain in full force and effect until either (a) payment in full of all the applicable Debt Securities (or such Debt Securities are otherwise satisfied and discharged in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Indenture) or (b) released as described in the following paragraph;
- (2) be binding upon each Subsidiary Guarantor; and
- (3) inure to the benefit of and be enforceable by the applicable Trustee, the Holders and their successors, transferees and assigns.

## **Table of Contents**

In the event that a Subsidiary Guarantor ceases to be a Subsidiary, either legal defeasance or covenant defeasance occurs with respect to the series or all or substantially all of the assets or all of the Capital Stock of such Subsidiary Guarantor is sold, including by way of sale, merger, consolidation or otherwise, such Subsidiary Guarantor will be released and discharged of its obligations under its Subsidiary Guarantee without any further action required on the part of the Trustee or any Holder, and no other person acquiring or owning the assets or Capital Stock of such Subsidiary Guarantor will be required to enter into a Subsidiary Guarantee (Section 1304). In addition, the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material may specify additional circumstances under which a Subsidiary Guarantor can be released from its Subsidiary Guarantee.

## **Conversion Rights**

The Debt Securities may be converted into other securities of our company, if at all, according to the terms and conditions of an applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. Such terms will include the conversion price, the conversion period, provisions as to whether conversion will be at the option of the holders of such series of Debt Securities or at the option of our company, the events requiring an adjustment of the conversion price and provisions affecting conversion in the event of the redemption of such series of Debt Securities.

## **Form, Exchange and Transfer**

The Debt Securities of each series will be issuable only in fully registered form, without coupons, and, unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, only in denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples thereof (Section 302).

At the option of the Holder, subject to the terms of the applicable Indenture and the limitations applicable to Global Securities, Debt Securities of each series will be exchangeable for other Debt Securities of the same series of any authorized denomination and of a like tenor and aggregate principal amount (Section 305).

Subject to the terms of the applicable Indenture and the limitations applicable to Global Securities, Debt Securities may be presented for exchange as provided above or for registration of transfer (duly endorsed or with the form of transfer endorsed thereon duly executed) at the office of the Security Registrar or at the office of any transfer agent designated by us for such purpose. No service charge will be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Debt Securities, but we may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in that connection. Such transfer or exchange will be effected upon the Security Registrar or such transfer agent, as the case may be, being satisfied with the documents of title and identity of the person making the request. The Security Registrar and any other transfer agent initially designated by us for any Debt Securities will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material (Section 305). We may at any time designate additional transfer agents or rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a transfer agent in each Place of Payment for the Debt Securities of each series (Section 1002).

If the Debt Securities of any series (or of any series and specified tenor) are to be redeemed in part, we will not be required to (1) issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Debt Security of that series (or of that series and specified tenor, as the case may be) during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption of any such Debt Security that may be selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (2) register the transfer of or exchange any Debt Security so selected for redemption, in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any such Debt Security being redeemed in part (Section 305).

## **Payment and Paying Agents**

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, payment of interest on a Debt Security on any Interest Payment Date will be made to the Person in whose name such Debt Security (or one or more Predecessor Debt Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest (Section 307).

---

## **Table of Contents**

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, principal of and any premium and interest on the Debt Securities of a particular series will be payable at the office of such Paying Agent or Paying Agents as we may designate for such purpose from time to time, except that at our option payment of any interest on Debt Securities in certificated form may be made by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address appears in the Security Register. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, the corporate trust office of the Trustee under the Senior Indenture in The City of New York will be designated as sole Paying Agent for payments with respect to Senior Debt Securities of each series, and the corporate trust office of the Trustee under the Subordinated Indenture in The City of New York will be designated as the sole Paying Agent for payment with respect to Subordinated Debt Securities of each series. Any other Paying Agents initially designated by us for the Debt Securities of a particular series will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. We may at any time designate additional Paying Agents or rescind the designation of any Paying Agent or approve a change in the office through which any Paying Agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a Paying Agent in each Place of Payment for the Debt Securities of a particular series (Section 1002).

All money paid by us to a Paying Agent for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Debt Security which remain unclaimed at the end of two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable will be repaid to us, and the Holder of such Debt Security thereafter may look only to us for payment (Section 1003).

### **Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets**

We may not consolidate with or merge into, or transfer, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of our assets to, any Person (a successor Person ), and may not permit any Person to consolidate with or merge into us, unless:

- (1) the successor Person (if any) is a corporation, partnership, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of any domestic jurisdiction and assumes our obligations on the Debt Securities and under the Indentures;
- (2) immediately before and after giving pro forma effect to the transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both, would become an Event of Default, has occurred and is continuing; and
- (3) several other conditions, including any additional conditions with respect to any particular Debt Securities specified in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, are met (Section 801).

### **Events of Default**

Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, each of the following will constitute an Event of Default under the applicable Indenture with respect to Debt Securities of any series:

- (1) failure to pay principal of or any premium on any Debt Security of that series when due, whether or not, in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, such payment is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;
- (2) failure to pay any interest on any Debt Securities of that series when due, continued for 30 days, whether or not, in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, such payment is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;
- (3) failure to deposit any sinking fund payment, when due, in respect of any Debt Security of that series, whether or not, in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, such deposit is prohibited by the subordination provisions of the Subordinated Indenture;

**Table of Contents**

- (4) failure to perform or comply with the provisions described under Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets ;
- (5) failure to perform any of our other covenants in such Indenture (other than a covenant included in such Indenture solely for the benefit of a series other than that series), continued for 60 days after written notice has been given by the applicable Trustee, or the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series, as provided in such Indenture;
- (6) Indebtedness of ourself, any Significant Subsidiary or, if a Subsidiary Guarantor has guaranteed the series, such Subsidiary Guarantor, is not paid within any applicable grace period after final maturity or is accelerated by its holders because of a default and the total amount of such Indebtedness unpaid or accelerated exceeds \$20.0 million;
- (7) any judgment or decree for the payment of money in excess of \$20.0 million is entered against us, any Significant Subsidiary or, if a Subsidiary Guarantor has guaranteed the series, such Subsidiary Guarantor, remains outstanding for a period of 60 consecutive days following entry of such judgment and is not discharged, waived or stayed;
- (8) certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization affecting us, any Significant Subsidiary or, if a Subsidiary Guarantor has guaranteed the series, such Subsidiary Guarantor; and
- (9) if any Subsidiary Guarantor has guaranteed such series, the Subsidiary Guarantee of any such Subsidiary Guarantor is held by a final non-appealable order or judgment of a court of competent jurisdiction to be unenforceable or invalid or ceases for any reason to be in full force and effect (other than in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture) or any Subsidiary Guarantor or any Person acting on behalf of any Subsidiary Guarantor denies or disaffirms such Subsidiary Guarantor's obligations under its Subsidiary Guarantee (other than by reason of a release of such Subsidiary Guarantor from its Subsidiary Guarantee in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture) (Section 501).

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default with respect to Whiting Petroleum Corporation described in clause (8) above) with respect to the Debt Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, either the applicable Trustee or the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series by notice as provided in the Indenture may declare the principal amount of the Debt Securities of that series (or, in the case of any Debt Security that is an Original Issue Discount Debt Security, such portion of the principal amount of such Debt Security as may be specified in the terms of such Debt Security) to be due and payable immediately. If an Event of Default with respect to Whiting Petroleum Corporation described in clause (8) above with respect to the Debt Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs, the principal amount of all the Debt Securities of that series (or, in the case of any such Original Issue Discount Security, such specified amount) will automatically, and without any action by the applicable Trustee or any Holder, become immediately due and payable. After any such acceleration, but before a judgment or decree based on acceleration, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series may, under certain circumstances, rescind and annul such acceleration if all Events of Default, other than the non-payment of accelerated principal (or other specified amount), have been cured or waived as provided in the applicable Indenture (Section 502). For information as to waiver of defaults, see Modification and Waiver below.

Subject to the provisions of the Indentures relating to the duties of the Trustees in case an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, each Trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the applicable Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders, unless such Holders have offered to such Trustee reasonable indemnity (Section 603). Subject to such provisions for the indemnification of the Trustees, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of any series will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Debt Securities of that series (Section 512).

## **Table of Contents**

No Holder of a Debt Security of any series will have any right to institute any proceeding with respect to the applicable Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee, or for any other remedy thereunder, unless:

- (1) such Holder has previously given to the Trustee under the applicable Indenture written notice of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Debt Securities of that series;
- (2) the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series have made written request, and such Holder or Holders have offered reasonable indemnity, to the Trustee to institute such proceeding as trustee; and
- (3) the Trustee has failed to institute such proceeding, and has not received from the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of that series a direction inconsistent with such request, within 60 days after such notice, request and offer (Section 507).

However, such limitations do not apply to a suit instituted by a Holder of a Debt Security for the enforcement of payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on such Debt Security on or after the applicable due date specified in such Debt Security or, if applicable, to convert such Debt Security (Section 508).

We will be required to furnish to each Trustee annually a statement by certain of our officers as to whether or not we, to their knowledge, are in default in the performance or observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of the applicable Indenture and, if so, specifying all such known defaults (Section 1004).

## **Modification and Waiver**

Modifications and amendments of an Indenture may be made by us, the Subsidiary Guarantors, if applicable, and the applicable Trustee with the consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of each series affected by such modification or amendment; provided, however, that no such modification or amendment may, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Debt Security affected thereby:

- (1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Debt Security;
- (2) reduce the principal amount of, or any premium or interest on, any Debt Security;
- (3) reduce the amount of principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or any other Debt Security payable upon acceleration of the Maturity thereof;
- (4) change the place or currency of payment of principal of, or any premium or interest on, any Debt Security;
- (5) impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment due on or any conversion right with respect to any Debt Security;
- (6) modify the subordination provisions in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, or modify any conversion provisions, in either case in a manner adverse to the Holders of the Subordinated Debt Securities;

Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

- (7) except as provided in the applicable Indenture, release the Subsidiary Guarantee of a Subsidiary Guarantor;
- (8) reduce the percentage in principal amount of Outstanding Debt Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for modification or amendment of the Indenture;
- (9) reduce the percentage in principal amount of Outstanding Debt Securities of any series necessary for waiver of compliance with certain provisions of the Indenture or for waiver of certain defaults; or
- (10) modify such provisions with respect to modification, amendment or waiver (Section 902).

- 11 -

---

## **Table of Contents**

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of any series may waive compliance by us with certain restrictive provisions of the applicable Indenture (Section 1009). The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities of any series may waive any past default under the applicable Indenture, except a default in the payment of principal, premium or interest and certain covenants and provisions of the Indenture which cannot be amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Debt Security of such series (Section 513).

Each of the Indentures provides that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Debt Securities have given or taken any direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action under such Indenture as of any date:

- (1) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that will be deemed to be Outstanding will be the amount of the principal that would be due and payable as of such date upon acceleration of maturity to such date;
- (2) if, as of such date, the principal amount payable at the Stated Maturity of a Debt Security is not determinable (for example, because it is based on an index), the principal amount of such Debt Security deemed to be Outstanding as of such date will be an amount determined in the manner prescribed for such Debt Security; and
- (3) the principal amount of a Debt Security denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units that will be deemed to be Outstanding will be the United States-dollar equivalent, determined as of such date in the manner prescribed for such Debt Security, of the principal amount of such Debt Security (or, in the case of a Debt Security described in clause (1) or (2) above, of the amount described in such clause).

Certain Debt Securities, including those owned by us, any Subsidiary Guarantor or any of our other Affiliates, will not be deemed to be Outstanding (Section 101).

Except in certain limited circumstances, we will be entitled to set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of Outstanding Debt Securities of any series entitled to give or take any direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action under the applicable Indenture, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Indenture. In certain limited circumstances, the Trustee will be entitled to set a record date for action by Holders. If a record date is set for any action to be taken by Holders of a particular series, only persons who are Holders of Outstanding Debt Securities of that series on the record date may take such action. To be effective, such action must be taken by Holders of the requisite principal amount of such Debt Securities within a specified period following the record date. For any particular record date, this period will be 180 days or such other period as may be specified by us (or the Trustee, if it set the record date), and may be shortened or lengthened (but not beyond 180 days) from time to time (Section 104).

## **Satisfaction and Discharge**

Each Indenture will be discharged and will cease to be of further effect as to all outstanding Debt Securities of any series issued thereunder, when:

- (1) either:
  - (a) all outstanding Debt Securities of that series that have been authenticated (except lost, stolen or destroyed Debt Securities that have been replaced or paid and Debt Securities for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust and thereafter repaid to us) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or
  - (b) all outstanding Debt Securities of that series that have not been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation have become due and payable or will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements





---

**Table of Contents**

satisfactory to the Trustee and in any case we have irrevocably deposited with the Trustee as trust funds money in an amount sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay the entire indebtedness of such Debt Securities not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest to the Stated Maturity or redemption date;

- (2) we have paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable by us under the Indenture with respect to the Debt Securities of that series; and
- (3) we have delivered an Officers Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the Trustee stating that all conditions precedent to satisfaction and discharge of the Indenture with respect to the Debt Securities of that series have been satisfied (Article Four).

**Legal Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance**

If and to the extent indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, we may elect, at our option at any time, to have the provisions of Section 1502, relating to defeasance and discharge of indebtedness, which we call legal defeasance or Section 1503, relating to defeasance of certain restrictive covenants applied to the Debt Securities of any series, or to any specified part of a series, which we call covenant defeasance (Section 1501).

*Legal Defeasance.* The Indentures provide that, upon our exercise of our option (if any) to have Section 1502 applied to any Debt Securities, we and, if applicable, each Subsidiary Guarantor will be discharged from all our obligations, and, if such Debt Securities are Subordinated Debt Securities, the provisions of the Subordinated Indenture relating to subordination will cease to be effective, with respect to such Debt Securities (except for certain obligations to convert, exchange or register the transfer of Debt Securities, to replace stolen, lost or mutilated Debt Securities, to maintain paying agencies and to hold moneys for payment in trust) upon the deposit in trust for the benefit of the Holders of such Debt Securities of money or United States Government Obligations, or both, which, through the payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms, will provide money in an amount sufficient to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on such Debt Securities on the respective Stated Maturities in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture and such Debt Securities. Such defeasance or discharge may occur only if, among other things:

- (1) we have delivered to the applicable Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that we have received from, or there has been published by, the United States Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or there has been a change in tax law, in either case to the effect that Holders of such Debt Securities will not recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and legal defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and legal defeasance were not to occur;
- (2) no Event of Default or event that with the passing of time or the giving of notice, or both, shall constitute an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing at the time of such deposit or, with respect to any Event of Default described in clause (8) under Events of Default, at any time until 121 days after such deposit;
- (3) such deposit and legal defeasance will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any agreement or instrument to which we are a party or by which we are bound;
- (4) in the case of Subordinated Debt Securities, at the time of such deposit, no default in the payment of all or a portion of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any of our Senior Debt shall have occurred and be continuing, no event of default shall have resulted in the acceleration of any of our Senior Debt and no other event of default with respect to any of our Senior Debt shall have occurred and be continuing permitting after notice or the lapse of time, or both, the acceleration thereof; and
- (5) we have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such deposit shall not cause the Trustee or the trust so created to be subject to the Investment Company Act of 1940 (Sections 1502 and 1504).



## **Table of Contents**

*Covenant Defeasance.* The Indentures provide that, upon our exercise of our option (if any) to have Section 1503 applied to any Debt Securities, we may omit to comply with certain restrictive covenants (but not to conversion, if applicable), including those that may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, the occurrence of certain Events of Default, which are described above in clause (5) (with respect to such restrictive covenants) and clauses (6), (7) and (9) under Events of Default and any that may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, will not be deemed to either be or result in an Event of Default and, if such Debt Securities are Subordinated Debt Securities, the provisions of the Subordinated Indenture relating to subordination will cease to be effective, in each case with respect to such Debt Securities. In order to exercise such option, we must deposit, in trust for the benefit of the Holders of such Debt Securities, money or United States Government Obligations, or both, which, through the payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms, will provide money in an amount sufficient to pay the principal of and any premium and interest on such Debt Securities on the respective Stated Maturities in accordance with the terms of the applicable Indenture and such Debt Securities. Such covenant defeasance may occur only if we have delivered to the applicable Trustee an Opinion of Counsel that in effect says that Holders of such Debt Securities will not recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and covenant defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amount, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and covenant defeasance were not to occur, and the requirements set forth in clauses (2), (3), (4) and (5) above are satisfied. If we exercise this option with respect to any Debt Securities and such Debt Securities were declared due and payable because of the occurrence of any Event of Default, the amount of money and United States Government Obligations so deposited in trust would be sufficient to pay amounts due on such Debt Securities at the time of their respective Stated Maturities but may not be sufficient to pay amounts due on such Debt Securities upon any acceleration resulting from such Event of Default. In such case, we would remain liable for such payments (Sections 1503 and 1504).

If we exercise either our legal defeasance or covenant defeasance option, any Subsidiary Guarantees will terminate (Section 1304).

## **Notices**

Notices to Holders of Debt Securities will be given by mail to the addresses of such Holders as they may appear in the Security Register (Sections 101 and 106).

## **Title**

We, the Subsidiary Guarantors, the Trustees and any agent of us, the Subsidiary Guarantors or a Trustee may treat the Person in whose name a Debt Security is registered as the absolute owner of the Debt Security (whether or not such Debt Security may be overdue) for the purpose of making payment and for all other purposes (Section 308).

## **Governing Law**

The Indentures and the Debt Securities will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the law of the State of New York (Section 112).

## **Regarding the Trustee**

We may from time to time maintain lines of credit, and have other customary banking relationships, with the trustee or its affiliates under the Senior Indenture or the trustee under the Subordinated Indenture.

The Indentures and provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, which we refer to in this prospectus as the Trust Indenture Act, that are incorporated by reference therein, contain limitations on the rights of the trustee, should it become one of our creditors, to obtain payment of claims in certain cases or to realize on certain

---

## **Table of Contents**

property received by it in respect of any such claim as security or otherwise. The trustee is permitted to engage in other transactions with us or any of our affiliates; provided, however, that if it acquires any conflicting interest (as defined under the Trust Indenture Act), it must eliminate such conflict or resign.

### **Book-Entry, Delivery and Settlement**

We will issue the Debt Securities in whole or in part in the form of one or more global certificates, which we refer to as global securities. We will deposit the global securities with or on behalf of The Depository Trust Company, which we refer to as DTC, and registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC. Beneficial interests in the global securities may be held through the Euroclear System ( Euroclear ) and Clearstream Banking, S.A. ( Clearstream ) (as indirect participants in DTC).

We have provided the following descriptions of the operations and procedures of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream solely as a matter of convenience. These operations and procedures are solely within the control of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream and are subject to change by them from time to time. Neither we, any underwriter nor the trustee take any responsibility for these operations or procedures, and you are urged to contact DTC, Euroclear or Clearstream directly to discuss these matters.

DTC has advised us that:

DTC is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a banking organization within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a clearing corporation within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code and a clearing agency registered under Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934;

DTC holds securities that its direct participants deposit with DTC and facilitates the settlement among direct participants of securities transactions, such as transfers and pledges, in deposited securities through electronic computerized book-entry changes in direct participants' accounts, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of securities certificates;

Direct participants include securities brokers and dealers, trust companies, clearing corporations and other organizations;

DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ( DTCC ). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries;

Access to the DTC system is also available to indirect participants such as securities brokers and dealers, banks and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a direct participant, either directly or indirectly; and

The rules applicable to DTC and its direct and indirect participants are on file with the SEC. We expect that under procedures established by DTC:

Upon deposit of the global securities with DTC or its custodian, DTC will credit on its internal system the accounts of direct participants designated by the underwriters with portions of the principal amounts of the global securities; and

Ownership of the Debt Securities will be shown on, and the transfer of ownership of the Debt Securities will be effected only through, records maintained by DTC or its nominee, with respect to interests of direct participants, and the records of direct and indirect participants, with respect to interests of persons other than participants.



---

**Table of Contents**

Investors in the global securities who are participants in DTC's system may hold their interests therein directly through DTC. Investors in the global securities who are not participants may hold their interests therein indirectly through organizations (including Euroclear and Clearstream) which are participants in such system. Euroclear and Clearstream may hold interests in the global securities on behalf of their participants through customers' securities accounts in their respective names on the books of their respective depositories, which are Euroclear Bank S.A./N.V., as operator of Euroclear, and Citibank, N.A., as depository of Clearstream. All interests in a securities, including those held through Euroclear or Clearstream, may be subject to the procedures and requirements of DTC. Those interests held through Euroclear or Clearstream may also be subject to the procedures and requirements of such systems.

The laws of some jurisdictions require that purchasers of securities take physical delivery of those securities in the form of a certificate. For that reason, it may not be possible to transfer interests in a global security to those persons. In addition, because DTC can act only on behalf of its participants, who in turn act on behalf of persons who hold interests through participants, the ability of a person having an interest in a global security to pledge or transfer that interest to persons or entities that do not participate in DTC's system, or otherwise to take actions in respect of that interest, may be affected by the lack of a physical definitive security in respect of that interest.

So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of a global security, DTC or that nominee will be considered the sole owner or holder of the Debt Securities represented by that global security for all purposes under the applicable Indenture and under the Debt Securities. Except as described below, owners of beneficial interests in a global security will not be entitled to have Debt Securities represented by that global security registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive the Debt Securities in the form of a physical certificate and will not be considered the owners or holders of the Debt Securities under the applicable Indenture or under the Debt Securities, and may not be entitled to give the trustee directions, instructions or approvals. For that reason, each holder owning a beneficial interest in a global security must rely on DTC's procedures and, if that holder is not a direct or indirect participant in DTC, on the procedures of the DTC participant through which that holder owns its interest, to exercise any rights of a holder of Debt Securities under the applicable Indenture or the global security.

Neither we nor the trustee will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of DTC's records relating to the Debt Securities or relating to payments made by DTC on account of the Debt Securities, or any responsibility to maintain, supervise or review any of DTC's records relating to the Debt Securities.

We will make payments on the Debt Securities represented by the global securities to DTC or its nominee, as the registered owner of the Debt Securities. We expect that when DTC or its nominee receives any payment on the Debt Securities represented by a global security, DTC will credit participants' accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their beneficial interests in the global security as shown in DTC's records. We also expect that payments by DTC's participants to owners of beneficial interests in the global security held through those participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practice as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers registered in the names of nominees for such customers. DTC's participants will be responsible for those payments.

Payments on the Debt Securities represented by the global securities will be made in immediately available funds. Transfers between participants in DTC will be made in accordance with DTC's rules and will be settled in immediately available funds.

Transfers between participants in DTC will be effected in accordance with DTC's procedures, and will be settled in same-day funds, and transfers between participants in Euroclear and Clearstream will be effected in accordance with their respective rules and operating procedures.

Cross-market transfers between the participants in DTC, on the one hand, and Euroclear or Clearstream participants, on the other hand, will be effected through DTC in accordance with DTC's rules on behalf of

## **Table of Contents**

Euroclear or Clearstream, as the case may be, by its depository; however, such cross-market transactions will require delivery of instructions to Euroclear or Clearstream, as the case may be, by the counterparty in such system in accordance with the rules and procedures and within the established deadlines (European time) of such system. Euroclear or Clearstream, as the case may be, will, if the transaction meets its settlement requirements, deliver instructions to its respective depository to take action to effect final settlement on its behalf by delivering or receiving interests in the relevant global security in DTC, and making or receiving payment in accordance with normal procedures for same-day funds settlement applicable to DTC. Euroclear participants and Clearstream participants may not deliver instructions directly to the depositories for Euroclear or Clearstream.

DTC has advised us that it will take any action permitted to be taken by a holder of Debt Securities only at the direction of one or more participants to whose account DTC has credited the interests in the global securities and only in respect of such portion of the aggregate principal amount of the Debt Securities as to which such participant or participants has or have given such direction. However, if there is an event of default under the Debt Securities, DTC reserves the right to exchange the global securities for certificated Debt Securities, and to distribute such Debt Securities to its participants.

Although DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream have agreed to the foregoing procedures to facilitate transfers of interests in the global securities among participants in DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream, they are under no obligation to perform or to continue to perform such procedures, and may discontinue such procedures at any time. None of the Company, the trustee or any of their respective agents will have any responsibility for the performance by DTC, Euroclear or Clearstream or their respective direct or indirect participants of their respective obligations under the rules and procedures governing their operations.

### **Exchange of Global Securities for Certificated Securities**

We will issue certificated Debt Securities to each person that DTC identifies as the beneficial owner of Debt Securities represented by the global securities upon surrender by DTC of the global securities only if:

DTC notifies us that it is no longer willing or able to act as a depository for the global securities, and we have not appointed a successor depository within 90 days of that notice;

An event of default with respect to the Debt Securities has occurred and is continuing; or

We decide not to have the Debt Securities represented by a global security.

Neither we nor the trustee will be liable for any delay by DTC, its nominee or any direct or indirect participant in identifying the beneficial owners of the related Debt Securities. We and the trustee may conclusively rely on, and will be protected in relying on, instructions from DTC or its nominee, including instructions about the registration and delivery, and the respective principal amounts, of the Debt Securities to be issued.

### **Same Day Settlement and Payment**

We will make payments in respect of the Debt Securities represented by the global securities (including principal, premium, if any, and interest) by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the accounts specified by the global securities holder. We will make all payments of principal, interest and premium, if any, with respect to certificated Debt Securities by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the accounts specified by the holders of the certificated Debt Securities or, if no such account is specified, by mailing a check to each such holder's registered address. The Debt Securities represented by the global securities are expected to be eligible to trade in DTC's Same-Day Funds Settlement System, and any permitted secondary market trading activity in such Debt Securities will, therefore, be required by DTC to be settled in immediately available funds. The Company expects that secondary trading in any certificated Debt Securities will also be settled in immediately available funds.

## **Table of Contents**

Because of time zone differences, the securities account of a Euroclear or Clearstream participant purchasing an interest in a global security from a participant in DTC will be credited, and any such crediting will be reported to the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream participant, during the securities settlement processing day (which must be a business day for Euroclear and Clearstream) immediately following the settlement date of DTC. DTC has advised us that cash received in Euroclear or Clearstream as a result of sales of interests in a global securities by or through a Euroclear or Clearstream participant to a participant in DTC will be received with value on the settlement date of DTC but will be available in the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream cash account only as of the business day for Euroclear or Clearstream following DTC's settlement date.

### **DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK**

The following description of our capital stock summarizes general terms and provisions that apply to our capital stock. Since this is only a summary it does not contain all of the information that may be important to you. The summary is subject to and qualified in its entirety by reference to our certificate of incorporation, by-laws and rights agreement, which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part and incorporated by reference into this prospectus. See [Where You Can Find More Information](#).

#### **General**

Our authorized capital stock consists of 300,000,000 shares of common stock, \$0.001 par value per share, and 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.001 par value per share. We will disclose in an applicable prospectus supplement and/or offering material the number of shares of our common stock and preferred stock then outstanding.

#### **Common Stock**

Holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders and do not have cumulative voting rights. Accordingly, holders of a majority of the shares of our common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors may elect all of the directors standing for election. Holders of our common stock are entitled to receive proportionately any dividends if and when such dividends are declared by our board of directors, subject to any preferential dividend rights of outstanding preferred stock. Upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our company, the holders of our common stock are entitled to receive ratably our net assets available after the payment of all debts and other liabilities and subject to the prior rights of any outstanding preferred stock. Holders of our common stock have no preemptive, subscription, redemption or conversion rights. The rights, preferences and privileges of holders of our common stock are subject to, and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of shares of any series of preferred stock that we may designate and issue in the future.

#### **Preferred Stock**

Under the terms of our certificate of incorporation, our board of directors is authorized to designate and issue shares of preferred stock in one or more series without stockholder approval. Our board of directors has discretion to determine the rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions, including voting rights, dividend rights, conversion rights, redemption privileges and liquidation preferences, of each series of preferred stock.

Our board of directors has designated 1,500,000 shares of our preferred stock as Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock in connection with the adoption of our stockholder rights plan, as described below. Each holder of Series A preferred shares will be entitled to a minimum preferential quarterly dividend payment of \$1.00 per share, but will be entitled to an aggregate dividend of 100 times the dividend declared per share of our common stock. In the event of liquidation, the holders of the Series A preferred shares will be entitled to a minimum preferential liquidation payment of \$100 per share, but will be entitled to an aggregate payment of 100 times the payment made per share of our common stock. Each Series A preferred share will have 100 votes,



## Table of Contents

voting together with shares of our common stock. In the event of any merger, consolidation or other transaction in which shares of our common stock are exchanged, each Series A preferred share will be entitled to receive 100 times the amount received per share of our common stock. As of the date of this prospectus, no shares of our Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock were outstanding.

Our board of directors has designated 172,500 shares of our preferred stock as 6.25% Convertible Perpetual Preferred Stock. Each holder of the 6.25% Convertible Perpetual Preferred Stock is entitled to an annual dividend of \$6.25 per share to be paid quarterly in cash, common stock or a combination thereof on March 15, June 15, September 15 and December 15, when and if such dividend has been declared by our board of directors. We can not make any dividends or other distributions (other than certain stock dividends) on our common stock, or purchase our common stock, unless all accumulated and unpaid dividends on our convertible preferred stock have been paid. Each share of convertible preferred stock has a liquidation preference of \$100.00 per share plus accumulated and unpaid dividends and is convertible, at a holder's option, into shares of our common stock based on a conversion price of \$21.70815, subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events. If a fundamental change occurs, we may be required to pay a make-whole premium on convertible preferred stock converted in connection therewith. We cannot redeem the convertible preferred stock. At any time on or after June 15, 2013, we may cause all outstanding shares of the convertible preferred stock to be converted into shares of common stock if the closing price of our common stock equals or exceeds 120% of the then-prevailing conversion price for at least 20 trading days in a period of 30 consecutive trading days. The holders of convertible preferred stock have no voting rights unless dividends payable on the convertible preferred stock are in arrears for six or more quarterly periods. In that event, the holders of the convertible preferred stock, voting as a single class with the shares of any other preferred stock or preference securities having similar voting rights, will be entitled at the next regular or special meeting of our stockholders to elect two directors and the number of directors that comprise our board will be increased by the number of directors so elected.

If we offer preferred stock in the future, we will file the terms of the preferred stock with the SEC and the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material relating to that offering will include a description of the specific terms of the offering, including the following specific terms:

the series, the number of shares offered and the liquidation value of the preferred stock;

the price at which the preferred stock will be issued;

the dividend rate, the dates on which the dividends will be payable and other terms relating to the payment of dividends on the preferred stock;

the liquidation preference of the preferred stock;

the voting rights of the preferred stock;

whether the preferred stock is redeemable or subject to a sinking fund, and the terms of any such redemption or sinking fund;

whether the preferred stock is convertible or exchangeable for any other securities, and the terms of any such conversion; and

any additional rights, preferences, qualifications, limitations and restrictions of the preferred stock.

It is not possible to state the actual effect of the issuance of any shares of preferred stock upon the rights of holders of our common stock until the board of directors determines the specific rights of the holders of the preferred stock. However, these effects might include:

restricting dividends on the common stock;

diluting the voting power of the common stock;

---

**Table of Contents**

impairing the liquidation rights of the common stock; and

delaying or preventing a change in control of our company.

**Preferred Share Purchase Rights**

We have entered into a rights agreement pursuant to which each outstanding share of our common stock has attached to it one right to purchase from us one one-hundredth of a share of our Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock. Each share of our common stock that we issue prior to the expiration of the rights agreement will likewise have attached one right. Unless the context requires otherwise, all references in this prospectus to our common stock include the accompanying rights.

Currently, the rights are not exercisable and trade with our common stock. If the rights become exercisable, then each full right, unless held by a person or group that beneficially owns more than 15% of our outstanding common stock, will initially entitle the holder to purchase one one-hundredth of a Series A preferred share at a purchase price of \$180 per one one-hundredth of a Series A preferred share, subject to adjustment. The rights will become exercisable only if a person or group has acquired, or announced an intention to acquire, 15% or more of our outstanding common stock. Under some circumstances, including the existence of a 15% acquiring party, each holder of a right, other than the acquiring party, will be entitled to purchase at the right's then-current exercise price, shares of our common stock having a market value of two times the exercise price. If another corporation acquires our company after a party acquires 15% or more of our common stock, then each holder of a right will be entitled to receive the acquiring corporation's common shares having a market value of two times the exercise price. The rights may be redeemed at a price of \$.001 until a party acquires 15% or more of our common stock and, after that time, may be exchanged until a party acquires 50% or more of our common stock at a ratio of one share of common stock, or one one-hundredth of a Series A preferred share, per right, subject to adjustment. Series A preferred shares purchased upon the exercise of rights will not be redeemable. The rights expire on February 23, 2016, subject to extension. Under the rights agreement, our board of directors may reduce the thresholds applicable to the rights from 15% to not less than 10%. The rights do not have voting or dividend rights and, until they become exercisable, have no dilutive effect on our earnings.

The rights have certain anti-takeover effects, in that they could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change of control of our company by causing substantial dilution to a person or group that attempts to acquire a significant interest in our company on terms not approved by our board of directors.

**Delaware Anti-Takeover Law and Charter and By-law Provisions**

We are subject to the provisions of Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. In general, the statute prohibits a publicly held Delaware corporation from engaging in a business combination with an interested stockholder for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder, unless the business combination or the transaction by which the person became an interested stockholder is approved by the corporation's board of directors and/or stockholders in a prescribed manner or the person owns at least 85% of the corporation's outstanding voting stock after giving effect to the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder. The term business combination includes mergers, asset sales and other transactions resulting in a financial benefit to the interested stockholder. Subject to certain exceptions, an interested stockholder is a person who, together with affiliates and associates, owns, or within three years did own, 15% or more of the corporation's voting stock. A Delaware corporation may opt out from the application of Section 203 through a provision in its certificate of incorporation or by-laws. We have not opted out from the application of Section 203.

Under our certificate of incorporation and by-laws, our board of directors is divided into three classes, with staggered terms of three years each. Each year the term of one class expires. Any vacancies on the board of directors may be filled only by a majority vote of the remaining directors. Our certificate of incorporation and

## **Table of Contents**

by-laws also provide that any director may be removed from office, but only for cause and only by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least 70% of the voting power of our then outstanding capital stock entitled to vote generally in the election of directors.

Our certificate of incorporation prohibits stockholders from taking action by written consent without a meeting and provides that meetings of stockholders may be called only by our chairman of the board, our president or a majority of our board of directors. Our by-laws further provide that nominations for the election of directors and advance notice of other action to be taken at meetings of stockholders must be given in the manner provided in our by-laws, which contain detailed notice requirements relating to nominations and other action.

The foregoing provisions of our certificate of incorporation and by-laws and the provisions of Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change of control of our company.

## **Liability and Indemnification of Officers and Directors**

Our certificate of incorporation provides that our directors will not be personally liable to us or our stockholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except for liability (1) for any breach of a director's duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders, (2) for acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law, (3) under Section 174 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, or (4) for any transaction from which the director derives an improper personal benefit. Moreover, the provisions do not apply to claims against a director for violations of certain laws, including federal securities laws. If the Delaware General Corporation Law is amended to authorize the further elimination or limitation of directors' liability, then the liability of our directors will automatically be limited to the fullest extent provided by law. Our certificate of incorporation and by-laws also contain provisions to indemnify our directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by the Delaware General Corporation Law. In addition, we have entered into indemnification agreements with our directors and executive officers. The indemnification agreements do not increase the extent or scope of indemnification provided to our directors and executive officers under our certificate of incorporation and by-laws, but set forth indemnification and expense advancement rights and establish processes and procedures determining entitlement to obtaining indemnification and advancement of expenses. These provisions and agreements may have the practical effect in certain cases of eliminating the ability of stockholders to collect monetary damages from our directors and officers. We believe that these contractual agreements and the provisions in our certificate of incorporation and by-laws are necessary to attract and retain qualified persons as directors and officers.

## **DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES**

We may, at our option, elect to offer fractional interests in shares of preferred stock rather than a full share of preferred stock. In that event, depositary receipts will be issued for depositary shares, each of which will represent a fraction of a share of a particular class or series of preferred stock, as described in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material.

Any series of preferred stock represented by depositary shares will be deposited under a deposit agreement between us and the depositary. The prospectus supplement and/or other offering material relating to a series of depositary shares will set forth the name and address of the depositary for the depositary shares and summarize the material provisions of the deposit agreement. Subject to the terms of the deposit agreement, each owner of a depositary share will be entitled, in proportion to the applicable fraction of a share of preferred stock represented by such depositary share, to all the rights and preferences of the preferred stock represented by such depositary share, including dividend and liquidation rights and any right to convert or exchange the preferred stock into other securities.

## **Table of Contents**

We will describe the particular terms of any depositary shares we offer in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. You should review the documents pursuant to which the depositary shares will be issued, which will be described in more detail in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material.

### **DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS**

We may issue warrants for the purchase of Debt Securities, preferred stock, common stock or other securities. Warrants may be issued independently or together with Debt Securities, preferred stock or common stock offered by any prospectus supplement and/or other offering material and may be attached to or separate from any such offered securities. Each series of warrants will be issued under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a bank or trust company, as warrant agent, all as will be set forth in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material relating to the particular issue of warrants. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the warrants and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for or with any holders of warrants or beneficial owners of warrants.

The following summary of certain provisions of the warrants does not purport to be complete and is subject to, and is qualified in its entirety by reference to, all provisions of the warrant agreements.

Reference is made to the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material relating to the particular issue of warrants offered pursuant to such prospectus supplement and/or other offering material for the terms of and information relating to such warrants, including, where applicable:

the designation, aggregate principal amount, currencies, denominations and terms of the series of Debt Securities purchasable upon exercise of warrants to purchase Debt Securities and the price at which such Debt Securities may be purchased upon such exercise;

the number of shares of common stock purchasable upon the exercise of warrants to purchase common stock and the price at which such number of shares of common stock may be purchased upon such exercise;

the number of shares and series of preferred stock purchasable upon the exercise of warrants to purchase preferred stock and the price at which such number of shares of such series of preferred stock may be purchased upon such exercise;

the designation and number of units of other securities purchasable upon the exercise of warrants to purchase other securities and the price at which such number of units of such other securities may be purchased upon such exercise;

the date on which the right to exercise such warrants shall commence and the date on which such right shall expire;

United States federal income tax consequences applicable to such warrants;

the amount of warrants outstanding as of the most recent practicable date; and

any other terms of such warrants.

Warrants will be issued in registered form only. The exercise price for warrants will be subject to adjustment in accordance with the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material.

## Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

Each warrant will entitle the holder thereof to purchase such principal amount of Debt Securities or such number of shares of preferred stock, common stock or other securities at such exercise price as shall in each case be set forth in, or calculable from, the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material relating to the warrants, which exercise price may be subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events as set forth in such prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. After the close of business on the expiration date, or

- 22 -

---

**Table of Contents**

such later date to which such expiration date may be extended by us, unexercised warrants will become void. The place or places where, and the manner in which, warrants may be exercised shall be specified in the prospectus supplement and/or other offering material relating to such warrants.

Prior to the exercise of any warrants to purchase Debt Securities, preferred stock, common stock or other securities, holders of such warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of Debt Securities, preferred stock, common stock or other securities, as the case may be, purchasable upon such exercise, including the right to receive payments of principal of, premium, if any, or interest, if any, on the Debt Securities purchasable upon such exercise or to enforce covenants in the applicable Indenture, or to receive payments of dividends, if any, on the preferred stock, or common stock purchasable upon such exercise, or to exercise any applicable right to vote.

**DESCRIPTION OF STOCK PURCHASE CONTRACTS AND STOCK PURCHASE UNITS**

We may issue stock purchase contracts, including contracts obligating holders to purchase from us, and obligating us to sell to the holders, a specified number of shares of common stock or other securities at a future date or dates, which we refer to in this prospectus as stock purchase contracts. The price per share of the securities and the number of shares of the securities may be fixed at the time the stock purchase contracts are issued or may be determined by reference to a specific formula set forth in the stock purchase contracts. The stock purchase contracts may be issued separately or as part of units consisting of a stock purchase contract and Debt Securities, preferred securities, warrants, other securities or debt obligations of third parties, including U.S. treasury securities, securing the holders' obligations to purchase the securities under the stock purchase contracts, which we refer to herein as stock purchase units. The stock purchase contracts may require holders to secure their obligations under the stock purchase contracts in a specified manner. The stock purchase contracts also may require us to make periodic payments to the holders of the stock purchase units or vice versa, and those payments may be unsecured or refunded on some basis.

The stock purchase contracts, and, if applicable, collateral or depository arrangements, relating to the stock purchase contracts or stock purchase units, will be filed with the SEC in connection with the offering of stock purchase contracts or stock purchase units. The prospectus supplement and/or other offering material relating to a particular issue of stock purchase contracts or stock purchase units will describe the terms of those stock purchase contracts or stock purchase units, including the following:

if applicable, a discussion of material United States federal income tax considerations; and

any other information we think is important about the stock purchase contracts or the stock purchase units.

**WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION**

We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. We also filed a registration statement on Form S-3, including exhibits, under the Securities Act of 1933 with respect to the securities offered by this prospectus. This prospectus is a part of the registration statement, but does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement or the exhibits. You may read and copy the registration statement and any other document that we file at the SEC's public reference room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington D.C. 20549. You can call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the operation of the public reference room. You can also find our public filings with the SEC on the internet at a web site maintained by the SEC located at <http://www.sec.gov>.

We are incorporating by reference specified documents that we file with the SEC, which means:

incorporated documents are considered part of this prospectus;

we are disclosing important information to you by referring you to those documents; and

information we file with the SEC will automatically update and supersede information contained in this prospectus.





## **Table of Contents**

We incorporate by reference the documents listed below and any future filings we make with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 after the date of this prospectus and before the end of the offering of the securities pursuant to this prospectus:

our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011;

our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarters ended March 31, 2012 and June 30, 2012;

our Current Reports on Form 8-K, dated January 17, 2012 and May 1, 2012;

the description of our common stock contained in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A, dated November 14, 2003, and any amendment or report updating that description; and

the description of our preferred share purchase rights contained in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A, dated February 24, 2006 and any amendment or report updating that description.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, information furnished under Items 2.02 and 7.01 of any Current Report on Form 8-K, including the related exhibits under Item 9.01, is not incorporated by reference in this prospectus.

You may request a copy of any of these filings, at no cost, by request directed to us at the following address or telephone number:

Whiting Petroleum Corporation

1700 Broadway, Suite 2300

Denver, Colorado 80290

(303) 837-1661

Attention: Corporate Secretary

You can also find these filings on our website at [www.whiting.com](http://www.whiting.com). However, we are not incorporating the information on our website other than these filings into this prospectus.

## **PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION**

We may sell our securities, and any selling stockholder may sell shares of our common stock, in any one or more of the following ways from time to time: (i) through agents; (ii) to or through underwriters; (iii) through brokers or dealers; (iv) directly by us or any selling stockholders to purchasers, including through a specific bidding, auction or other process; or (v) through a combination of any of these methods of sale. The applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material will contain the terms of the transaction, name or names of any underwriters, dealers, agents and the respective amounts of securities underwritten or purchased by them, the initial public offering price of the securities, and the applicable agent's commission, dealer's purchase price or underwriter's discount. Any selling stockholders, dealers and agents participating in the distribution of the securities may be deemed to be underwriters, and compensation received by them on resale of the securities may be deemed to be underwriting discounts. Additionally, because selling stockholders may be deemed to be underwriters within the meaning of Section 2(11) of the Securities Act, selling stockholders may be subject to the prospectus delivery requirements of the Securities Act.

Any initial offering price, dealer purchase price, discount or commission may be changed from time to time.

Edgar Filing: WHITING OIL & GAS CORP - Form 424B5

The securities may be distributed from time to time in one or more transactions, at negotiated prices, at a fixed or fixed prices (that may be subject to change), at market prices prevailing at the time of sale, at various prices determined at the time of sale or at prices related to prevailing market prices.

- 24 -

## **Table of Contents**

Offers to purchase securities may be solicited directly by us or any selling stockholder or by agents designated by us from time to time. Any such agent may be deemed to be an underwriter, as that term is defined in the Securities Act, of the securities so offered and sold.

If underwriters are utilized in the sale of any securities in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered, such securities will be acquired by the underwriters for their own account and may be resold from time to time in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions, at fixed public offering prices or at varying prices determined by the underwriters at the time of sale. Securities may be offered to the public either through underwriting syndicates represented by managing underwriters or directly by one or more underwriters. If any underwriter or underwriters are utilized in the sale of securities, unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, the obligations of the underwriters are subject to certain conditions precedent and that the underwriters will be obligated to purchase all such securities if any are purchased.

If a dealer is utilized in the sale of the securities in respect of which this prospectus is delivered, we will sell such securities, and any selling stockholder will sell shares of our common stock to the dealer, as principal. The dealer may then resell such securities to the public at varying prices to be determined by such dealer at the time of resale. Transactions through brokers or dealers may include block trades in which brokers or dealers will attempt to sell shares as agent but may position and resell as principal to facilitate the transaction or in crosses, in which the same broker or dealer acts as agent on both sides of the trade. Any such dealer may be deemed to be an underwriter, as such term is defined in the Securities Act, of the securities so offered and sold. In addition, any selling stockholder may sell shares of our common stock in ordinary brokerage transactions or in transactions in which a broker solicits purchases.

Offers to purchase securities may be solicited directly by us or any selling stockholder and the sale thereof may be made by us or any selling stockholder directly to institutional investors or others, who may be deemed to be underwriters within the meaning of the Securities Act with respect to any resale thereof.

Any selling stockholders may also resell all or a portion of their shares of our common stock in transactions exempt from the registration requirements of the Securities Act in reliance upon Rule 144 under the Securities Act provided they meet the criteria and conform to the requirements of that rule, Section 4(1) of the Securities Act or other applicable exemptions, regardless of whether the securities are covered by the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

If so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, we or any selling stockholder may authorize agents and underwriters to solicit offers by certain institutions to purchase securities from us or any selling stockholder at the public offering price set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on the date or dates stated in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. Such delayed delivery contracts will be subject only to those conditions set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material.

Agents, underwriters and dealers may be entitled under relevant agreements with us or any selling stockholder to indemnification by us against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribution with respect to payments which such agents, underwriters and dealers may be required to make in respect thereof. The terms and conditions of any indemnification or contribution will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material. We may pay all expenses incurred with respect to the registration of the shares of common stock owned by any selling stockholders, other than underwriting fees, discounts or commissions, which will be borne by the selling stockholders.

We or any selling stockholder may also sell shares of our common stock through various arrangements involving mandatorily or optionally exchangeable securities, and this prospectus may be delivered in connection with those sales.

## **Table of Contents**

We or any selling stockholder may enter into derivative, sale or forward sale transactions with third parties, or sell securities not covered by this prospectus to third parties in privately negotiated transactions. If the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material indicates, in connection with those transactions, the third parties may sell securities covered by this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, including in short sale transactions and by issuing securities not covered by this prospectus but convertible into or exchangeable for or represents beneficial interests in such securities covered by this prospectus, or the return of which is derived in whole or in part from the value of such securities. The third party may use securities received under those sale, forward sale or derivative arrangements or securities pledged by us or any selling stockholder or borrowed from us, any selling stockholder or others to settle those sales or to close out any related open borrowings of stock, and may use securities received from us or any selling stockholder in settlement of those transactions to close out any related open borrowings of stock. The third party in such sale transactions will be an underwriter and will be identified in the applicable prospectus supplement (or a post-effective amendment) and/or other offering material.

Additionally, any selling stockholder may engage in hedging transactions with broker-dealers in connection with distributions of shares or otherwise. In those transactions, broker-dealers may engage in short sales of shares in the course of hedging the positions they assume with such selling stockholder. Any selling stockholder also may sell shares short and redeliver shares to close out such short positions. Any selling stockholder may also enter into option or other transactions with broker-dealers which require the delivery of shares to the broker-dealer. The broker-dealer may then resell or otherwise transfer such shares pursuant to this prospectus. Any selling stockholder also may loan or pledge shares, and the borrower or pledgee may sell or otherwise transfer the shares so loaned or pledged pursuant to this prospectus. Such borrower or pledgee also may transfer those shares to investors in our securities or the selling stockholder's securities or in connection with the offering of other securities not covered by this prospectus.

Underwriters, broker-dealers or agents may receive compensation in the form of commissions, discounts or concessions from us or any selling stockholder. Underwriters, broker-dealers or agents may also receive compensation from the purchasers of shares for whom they act as agents or to whom they sell as principals, or both. Compensation as to a particular underwriter, broker-dealer or agent might be in excess of customary commissions and will be in amounts to be negotiated in connection with transactions involving shares. In effecting sales, broker-dealers engaged by us or any selling stockholder may arrange for other broker-dealers to participate in the resales.

Each series of securities will be a new issue and, other than the common stock, which is listed on the New York Stock Exchange, will have no established trading market. We may elect to list any series of securities on an exchange, and in the case of the common stock, on any additional exchange, but, unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or other offering material, we shall not be obligated to do so. No assurance can be given as to the liquidity of the trading market for any of the securities.

Agents, underwriters and dealers may engage in transactions with, or perform services for us or any selling stockholder and our respective subsidiaries in the ordinary course of business.

Any underwriter may engage in over-allotment, stabilizing transactions, short covering transactions and penalty bids in accordance with Regulation M under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Over-allotment involves sales in excess of the offering size, which create a short position. Stabilizing transactions permit bids to purchase the underlying security so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum. Short covering transactions involve purchases of the securities in the open market after the distribution is completed to cover short positions. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a dealer when the securities originally sold by the dealer are purchased in a covering transaction to cover short positions. Those activities may cause the price of the securities to be higher than it would otherwise be. If commenced, the underwriters may discontinue any of the activities at any time. An underwriter may carry out these transactions on the New York Stock Exchange, in the over-the-counter market or otherwise.

**Table of Contents**

The place and time of delivery for securities will be set forth in the accompanying prospectus supplement and/or other offering material for such securities.

**LEGAL MATTERS**

The validity of the securities offered by this prospectus will be passed upon for us by Foley & Lardner LLP. The validity of the securities offered by this prospectus will be passed upon for any underwriters or agents by counsel named in the applicable prospectus supplement. The opinions of Foley & Lardner LLP and counsel for any underwriters or agents may be conditioned upon and may be subject to assumptions regarding future action required to be taken by us and any underwriters, dealers or agents in connection with the issuance of any securities. The opinions of Foley & Lardner LLP and counsel for any underwriters or agents may be subject to other conditions and assumptions, as indicated in the prospectus supplement.

**EXPERTS**

The financial statements, and the related financial statement schedule, incorporated in this Prospectus by reference from Whiting Petroleum Corporation's Annual Report on Form 10-K, and the effectiveness of Whiting Petroleum Corporation's internal control over financial reporting have been audited by Deloitte & Touche LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their reports, which are incorporated herein by reference. Such financial statements and financial statement schedule have been so incorporated in reliance upon the report of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

Certain information with respect to our oil and natural gas reserves derived from the report of Cawley Gillespie & Associates, Inc., an independent petroleum engineering consultant, has been incorporated in this prospectus by reference from Whiting Petroleum Corporation's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year-ended December 31, 2011, on the authority of said firm as an expert in petroleum engineering.

**Table of Contents**

**Whiting Petroleum Corporation**

**\$1,800,000,000**

**\$ % Senior Notes due 2019**

**\$ % Senior Notes due 2021**

**PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

***Joint Book-Running Managers***

**Wells Fargo Securities**

**J.P. Morgan**

**BofA Merrill Lynch**

***Senior Co-Managers***

**BBVA Securities**

**SunTrust Robinson Humphrey**

**US Bancorp**

**Capital One Securities**

**CIBC**

**RBC Capital Markets**

**Mitsubishi UFJ Securities**

*Co-Managers*

**KeyBanc Capital Markets**

**RB International Markets (USA)**

**Scotiabank**

**Santander**

**Barclays**

**BOSC, Inc.**

**Comerica Securities**

**Fifth Third Securities, Inc.**

**Morgan Stanley**

**Raymond James**

**September , 2013**